

With preceding

The Latine GRAMMAR.

OR,

A Guide teaching a compen-
dious way to attaine exact
Skill in the

LATINE TONGUE,
FOR

A proper Congruity and elegant
variety of Phrases in Prose
and Verse

Published for the Common good in conti-
nuation of a former Guide, teaching to
read English rightly, and Write
accordingly.

By *Richard Lloyd.*

LONDON,

Printed by *Thomas Roycroft*, for the Author.
Anno Dom. 1653.

GRAMMAR

THE FIRST PART OF THE

CONSTITUTION OF THE

REPUBLIC



OF THE

REPUBLIC

OF THE

REPUBLIC

OF THE

REPUBLIC

OF THE

REPUBLIC

OF THE



The Latine Grammar.

OR

A Guide, teaching a compendious
way to attaine exact skill in the
Latine Tongue, &c.

Of Grammar.



Grammar is a collection of
rules directing to write and
speak congruously, whence
the true meaning of words
may be certainly known.
And it hath two parts, E-
tymologic and Syntaxe.

Of Etymologic.

Etymologic teach the affections of words,
specially such as concerns the variations of
parts of Speech.

of

Of parts of Speech.

The principall parts of speech are three.

- 1 Nouns that betoken things.
- 2 Verbs that betoken a doing or suffering of the things.
- 3 Adverbs that signifie some circumstance belonging to the things, or to the doing or suffering of them.

Irregular Nouns and Verbs are variable by proper affections, But Adverbs are invariable being by common accidents.

Of common Accidents.

The common affections equally belonging to all parts of Speech are two, the forme and figure.

Of the Forme.

The forme both consist in the signification of words for which they were ordained,

Of the Figure.

The figure both consist in the origination of words, distinguishing them as Primitives and Derivatives.

Of a two fold forme or signification of words.

The signification of Words is either genuine and literall, according to their originall institution, or Tropologicall and translationis with Analogie to the literall, for words change sense each with other proportionably to the bonds of union,

or

or marks of opposition known between them, wherefore in a consentaneous sense any part will denominate the whole, or the whole any part having essentiall union each with other by a Trope called *Synecdoche*, likewise the cause will denominate its owne effect, or a subject, its own adjunct, and contrariwise, having naturall union amongst themselves, by a Trope called *Metonymia*, others having a Relative union (as they resemble) so accordingly they may denominate one another by a Trope called *Metaphora*. Lastly; in a dissentaneous sense when the gesture and pronounciation of the speaker, compared with a knowne condition of the thing or party spoken of, doe evidence a contrariety between the words and meaning, it is by a Trope called *Ironia*.

Of the Tropologicall forme or borrowed sense of words.

A Trope doth modifie the sense of words in proportion to their native use instituted either, 1. For supply where proper words are wanting, or 2. To civilize proper words which seem offensive, or 3. When the words are decent to beget variety the main object of delight. And it should be regulated with ingenuity, perspicuity, and moderation; for Jewels are not to cloath the body, but to adorne some eminent parts thereof; besides that the best things growing common become contemptible, in fine when the literall sense of words, with good Authors, doth breed absurdity, the Trope must rectifie it. And there is no such Author without Tropes, nor any student that can attaine their meaning.

Meaning, without previous skill therein as principles.

Of Synecdoche.

By *Synecdoche* either the Genus that is common and universall, doth give name unto the Species, being some particular comprehended under it, as *Atrides*, for *Agamemnon*, whereas *Atreus* had another Sonne, *Cytherea*, for *Venus*: *Nequam* for *Diabolus*. And thereto belongeth any other Noun, used by the figure *Antonomasia*, *Orator* for *Cicero*, *Poeta* for *Homerus*, *Urbs* for *Roma*, *quadrupes* for *Equus*, *mortalis* for *Homo*, *ventus* for *Auster*, *ne credo color*, for *pulchritudini*, *bello virtus dignoscitur*, for *spēctatur fortitudo*, *uteris auctoritate intemperantius*, for *iracundius*, *semper ebrius*, for *sape*. And contrariwise the species doth give name unto the genus, as *Anglus perit*, for *Angli*, the singular for the plurall, *Cato Curiū*, for *sapiens*, *frugales*, *Boreas* for *ventus*, *pons* for *Mare*, *nectar* for *Vinum*, *Charta*, *Papyri* vander, for *membrana*, *fides Panica*, for *fallax*, aut *afflicta*, *omnium genuū triumphas*, for *gaudes*, *virū bacchanalia*, for *Intemperanter*, *parum abest*, for *nihil* aut *non*. The finite for infinite, or else the totall, or integrall doth give name unto the parte or members, as *Catona sepulto*, for *Catonis corpore*, *bibit Araxim*, for *aquam*, *protermit silvam*, for *Arbores*, *Graci*, for *Argivi*, *totū portu peregit annū*, for *Hyemem*, *mendicant ostium*, for *ad Ostia divitum*, *vellat dimicare virū*, for *singularim*. And contrariwise, the part doth denominate the whole, *animaque liavit*, for *homine*, *orbiter est oculus*, for *oculatus*, *es* for *nummus*, *ferrum* aut *mucro*, for *gladius*, *pius*, *proa*, *puppis*, for *Navis*, *imen*, *Janua*, *paries*, *tectum*, for *Domus*, me-

nia, for *Urbs*, *te septima portas omnibus errantem terris et fluctibus æstas*, for *annus*, *quiescit*, for *dormit*, *montensaria*, *caecitate percussus*, for *subita*, *pedetentim venit*, for *garde*.

Thus whether the whole doth name the part, or a part the whole, either way they advance each other; the whole naming a *majori*, doth ascribe its entire worth and honour to the part thence named, the part naming *ab insigniori*, doth nobilitate the whole by its eminency, without which none should denominate. Wherefore we call a *Boole stultum caput*, not *caleancum*, because the heele is incapable of discretion. And a devout person *pium pectus*, not *cerebrum*, the seat of affection, complying mostly with devotion. Last, this trope hath precedence before the rest, as grounded on the nearest bond of union, to witt, the inward causes of matter and forme, and is seconded by *Metonymia*, grounded on the outward causes.

Of Metonymia.

By *Metonymia*, the externall cause being the 1. efficient, 2. instrument, or 3. end, is put for the effect. 1. *Aeneada* for *Anee posteritas*, *Lucanus legitur* for *poeta*. *Aethiopes multum monstrant in corpore solem*, for *nigredinem*; *præcepit ira insolens victoria*, and most epithets; *jugulat* for *occidit*, *segnius inflat* for *tardius*. 2. *Lingua* for *sermo*, *minuæ* for *scriptura*, *arma* for *bellum*. 3. *Iustitia* for *pænitentia*, *avis imponit honorem*, for *victimam*. And contrariwise the Effect is put for the Cause, 1. *Carminibus metus omnis abest*, for *poetis*, *Libycæ clades*, for *Scipiadæ*, *expalluit* for *timuit*, *sudavit* for *laboravit*. 2. *Direxit vulnera* for *tela*. 3. *serta legunt* for *flores*. Onomastopœa

topœia doth belong to a Metonymie of the effect,
as *bambus apum* for *id soni*. The subject also doth
give name unto the adiuncts taken largely, whether
inherent therein, or adhering thereto, which way
are used, 1. The seat for quality *non tibi plus cordis*
sed minus oris inest, for *prudentiæ*, *verecundiæ*. 2. The
continent for the thing contained, *focuſ* for *ignis*,
poculum ebibit for *vinum*, specially places for in-
habitants or things done therein. *Africa belligerat*,
for *Africani*, *caycer* for *captivi*, *sunt pleni ruriſ* for *rusti-*
citatis, *forum* for *lites*, *id roſtra docent*, for *conciona-*
tores, *tibi militat æther*, for *fulgura cum tonitribus*.
3. The chiefe Authors and Owners for things per-
taining to them. *Iunoni templum ſtruxit Sidonia Di-*
do for *ſtructure author erat præcipua*. *Acheloia cornua*
fregit Heſtor, for *Dux cum exercitu*, ſo *Advocatus* for
eliens, *proximus ardet V calegon*, for *domus*. 4. Things
for time proper thereto, *tertia meſſis erat* for *annus*.
5. The thing ſignified for the ſigne. *Orphea conſli-*
tuit medio ſylvaſq; ſequaces, for *imagines celatas pal-*
lida luna pluit for *pluviam præmonſtrat*, *populi cor im-*
pingua for *impinguatum renuncia*. Hereto belong ſa-
cramentall phraſes, but Sacraments are of a higher
nature, morally exhibiting, like Scales and earneſts,
a preſent right with aſſurance of a future full enjoy-
ment. 6. The Antecedent for the Conſequent,
reſcit pedes for *alvum exonerat*; *fuit Ilion ingens gloria*
Dardanium for *deſit eſſe*, *tunc meſſis in herba* for *ver*,
ſo *meſſis in umbra* for *hyems*, *muna non ſperno* for *ac-*
cipio, *preceſ exaudiantur* for *Conceduntur*. Some call
theſe inſtances *Litotes*, ſome call them *Metalepſis*,
and both ſuch and other Examples denominating
all the Company by the chiefe Actor, have neer af-
ſinitie with *Synecdoche* of the part, as contrary-
wiſe

wife *Cuvil* for *frugales* have affinity with a Metonymie of the subiect for the adiunct quality. Likewise the adiunct doth give name unto the subiect, 1. Vertues, Vices, and other properties, are set for things endued therewith, *patientia vincit* for *patients*, *scelus* for *sceleratus*, *iussit potestas* for *magistratus*, *artem terra quævis alit* for *artificem*, *A Cyathis* for *Promus*. 2. *Vina coronant* for *pocula*, *combuvuntur lites* for *fova*, *Mene putas vestris includere iudis* for *circis*, *frigus opacum quod umbraculis adiacet*. 3. *Luget Parnassus* for *Muse*, *hic passim insanitur* for *ab omnibus vicinis*. 4. *Capiunt oculis & pectore noctem*, for *somnum*, *fundit ab antris Æolus armatas hyemes* for *procellas*, *solstitio defende pecus* for *æstu*. *Autumno grævde vites* for *vuvis*, *nulla infelicioꝝ atas* for *nullius ætatis homines*. 5. *Urina sana* for *sanitatem indicans*, *sceptrum, fascēs, pupura* for *princeps*, *claves* for *Ecclesiasticall*, *gladius* for *civill government*, *pubes, lanugo* for *iuvenus*, *coga* for *pax* *subscripsit* for *assensit*. 6. *Multa desiderantur* for *desunt*. *Lavinaque venit littora* for *ita postmodum vocata*, *scenam calefecimus* for *implevimus*, *speluncis abdidit atris* for *profundis*, which last Metonymies are as more remote so far more elegant: but the former between causes and effects are more familiar, because more naturall.

Of Metaphora.

By *Metaphora* words change their sense according to the likenesse of the thing spoken of, to the things which properly they do betoken, and that ample ground doth make this trope more capacious then any other; as *Corvus* for *nocens*, *Columba* for *innoxius*, *legis habena* for *potestas*, *Fulmen fortune* for *impetus*, *ferreus est precibus* for *inexorabilis*, *lata seges* for *uber*, *aurea Phæbe* for *rubicunda*, *vires gemmant* for

for *germinant*, *laterem larvat* for *nugatur*, *ramos compescit* *fluentes* for *excrecentes*, *fluxæ vires* for *minutæ*, *Hæbet ab Hebero fluuium*, for *oriuntur*, *mens fluctuat* for *dubitat*, *Lente venit* for *cunctanter*, *id lente feri* for *patienter*, *lente agit* for *remisse*, *lente rem probat* for *diu*, which is derived from *lentus*, properly signifying viscus or clammy.

This trope as it is more copious then any other, so it is more useful to unmaske the nature of things, to excite accordingly either love or hatred thereunto, and to accomplish both with grace, or without offence; therefore it is familiar in Adages or Parables of the wise, but it will require these cautions following.

1. That it doth not admit more disproportion then proportion, as *Celi fornices*, being neither large enough, nor circular.

2. That it be not too far fetcht, *Syrtis patrimonii*.

3. That it be not too obscene, as *stercus curiæ*.

4. That it doth not imply a contradiction, *seruus in studiis puer est*.

5. That it be not devious from it selfe, *exundat & ardet amore*.

6. That it be not too familiar a condition, requisite to all tropes, because they must be rarities.

Lastly, those Metaphors be most emphaticall, which add life or reason to inanimate or senselesse things, as *Pontem indignatus Araxes*, and having a double analogy they be reciprocal, as *auriga navis*, or *gubernator iovis*, but terminating in a simple relation they cannot be converted, as *vulpes* may be set for *callidus*, but not contrariwise *callidus* for *vulpes*, except it be by another trope, called *Synecdoche generis*.

Of Ironia.

By *Ironia* words are carryed from their owne to a cleane contrary sense, which is understood by the expression and contradiction of such words, to the things which literally they betoken. *Scilicet huc vitam servatam dote rependis*, for *ingratitude* *Me duce Davdanus spartam expugnavit adulter*, for *minime gentium*. *Id facinus in laude ponat egregia*, for *ignominia*; *Credo quam innumerabiles hostium copias in Italia fuisset*, for *nullas*: so *Qui Baviu non odit, amet tua carmina*, as *admodum inculta*. Sic, *idem iungat vulpes & mulgeat hircos*, for *ineptias agat*; which two last are called *Alismus*: *En agros metire iacens*, & *Satia te Sanguine Cyre*, both called *Sarcasmus*. These examples, *Midas pauper*, for *Cui sua defunt bona*; or *Codrus dives*, for *qui nil curit*, are not Ironies, but Metonymies of the consequent; *dare classibus aurores*, for *classes austris* is Hypallage; *de tuis nil dicam perinriis*, or *ut preteream tua latrocinia*, are Apophasis and Paralipsis, *Lucus qui non lucet*, *Parca que non parcat*, *Euxinus* for *Axenus* are Antiphrasis; all which resemble this trope, but are especially different from it.

Lastly, it is used most in merriments, and sometimes in grave, but sharpe reproofes of faults, no lesse odious then notorious.

Affections belonging to the former tropes.

Metalepsis is a graduall progresse of sundry tropes in the same word, *Stratoque super discumbitur ostro*. *Hinc movet Euphrates, illinc Germania bellum*: *Post aliquot mea regna videns mirabar aristas*.

Allegoria is the continuation of the same trope in sundry words, *nostros habemus Curios, Mamercos, Marios*

*Marios, rete accipitri non tenditur, neque miluo ne charta
nos prodat pertimesco, sine Cerere et Baccho friget Venus,
Comerabam iam vento tua iurgida vela secundo.*

*Filiolas Cadmi profert Nilotis Arundo,
Quas serit e Cnidio disillans sepia nodo,*

Which last is called *Aenigma*.

Catachresis is an usurpation of words enforced from the received to an improper sense, *faciesque simillima lauro, Ultiores sperate Deos, tibi Leta minatur, Vix gregis, aut acres tendunt arcus, minuto sunt animae, Capitis nives.*

Hyperbole doth amplify or abate the sense of words used unequally to their true meaning, not to deceive, but to levell the uneven opinion of the hearers, by such means rectified, and the first sort is called *Auxesis*, the last *Meiosis*: *Gigantes* for *proceri*, *Nani* for *pusilli*, *Mons* for *verruca*, *Parricidium* for *homicidium* and contrariwise *nusquam* *ruta fides*, for *apud paucos*, the indefinite for the finite, all *Hyperbolicall Synecdoches*, which some Authors think to be *Catachresis*. *Venere formosior, pice nigrior, Sublimi feriam sidera vertice.*

Every affection doth in some sort belong to all the Tropes, but the *Irony* is least affected with them. *Metalepsis* is most familiar to *Synecdoche* and the *Metonymie*, even as the *Allagory* to the *Metaphor*, *Catachresis* with good Authors, doth only affect the speech intended for the rusticks. And otherwise doth resemble the speech of Rusticks for the most part in *Comedies*.

*The common affections of Nouns
and Verbs.*

There be three affections common to Nouns and Verbs, to wit Number, Gender, and Person, whereof the Number doth equally belong both to Nouns and Verbs, the other two unequally, for the Gender is more peculiar unto Nouns, and the Person unto Verbs.

Of the Number.

There be two Numbers.

1 The Singular belonging to one as *Pater obijt.*

2 The plurall pertaining to more then one, as *liberi lugent.*

Exceptions.

Two Substantives singular with a Coniunctive Adverb called a Copulative, or one Noun Collective, or a Pronoun Distributive singular, referring to a society is equivalent to the plurall, speaking implicitly of many: And Verbs or Adjectives referring thereunto, will agree with the more worthy Person or Gender, the former in both being accounted worthiest, saving that the Neuter standeth for the worthier Gender after copulates that be-token things inanimat, as *Virga & Baculus non consolata sunt*, *gens armari perimus*, *vestrum aliquis adeste*, *utraq; suo delectata studio*, *aliud de dignantur*. Likewise Verbs singular called Impersonalls, are equivalent to the plurall, by virtue of the oblique construed with them, as *nos docere*

docere oportet, vobis discere non lubet, ab omnibus aut luditur aut cessatur.

Lastly, **Nouns** proper or common, being only plurall, referring in Apposition to other Substantives singular, are equivalent thereto, and speak but of one, as *Urbs Athenæ*, *Bacchanalia, festum infame*, *Circenses, curule certamen*, *Ancides*, *Virgilij poema*. *Tu mihi deliciae*, *Arx inopis divitiæ*.

Where may be noted that any Substantive of a continued signification, speaking of the same thing, must be put in the same case, *Phoebe nutrix nos amat alumnos*.

Of the Gender.

The Gender doth distinguish Nouns betwixt Male or female, physically by their sexes; but otherwise doth Grammatically differ. Sexes Nouns having commonly like Declension, and constantly a like construction unto those which have proper sexes.

The distinct Genders are only three,	1 Masculine, as <i>Spado, sermo</i> , 2 the Feminine, as <i>Vulpes, Nubes</i> . 3 The Neuter, as <i>scortum, flagitium</i> .

Annotations

Annotations.

A Noun cannot be of any more then one of the said three Genders in the same Sentence or Construction. But otherwise many Nouns by their termination and signification, may be some of the two first, and others of all three Genders; and of this last sort are all Adjectives, which if they have three divers endings, as *bonus bona bonum*, the first as *bonus* is Masculine, the second as *bona* is Feminine, the third as *bonum*, is Neuter; or having two severall endings, as *dulcis dulce*, the first as *dulcis* is Masculine or Feminine, the second as *dulce* is Neuter; or having but one ending, as *felix, dulcibus, bonus*, then such are of all three Genders, called the Common of three.

Substantives physically betokening both Sexes, hee and shee, under the same ending, as such by signification are both of the Masculine and Feminine Gender, called the Nouns of the Common of two, but notwithstanding in the same Sentence, or in a continued Construction they keep constantly to one Gender, as *Parens de quo dubitatur Africanus est*.

Other Substantives having no reference to distinct Sexes, are called Nouns of the doubtfull Gender, being either Masculine or Feminine, upon the authority of approved Authors who use the same promiscuously only in a continued Construction, but not in the same Sentence, as *nullus est dies quas literas non scribo*. Appellatives of Beasts, Birds, & Fishes, as *vulpes, hirundo, passer, aquila, cetus*, specially those least conversant with man, though having distinct Sexes, yet keep constantly to one Gender, most agreeable to their termination, and are called Epicoenes.

Exceptions

Exceptions.

Some such Nouns betokening domestike creatures, and having a Termination that is not constant to one Gender, be of the common of two, as *Bos, Sus, Canis*, and such like: And others of like sort, not having reference to any sex, are doubtfull as *Grus, Bubo*, with such others.

Of distinct Genders knowne by generall

R U L E S.

The proper Gender of any Nouns may certainly be known by their signification or termination, and sometimes by combination of both together.

Of Genders knowne by signification.

Nouns typically betokening a certaine sex, if Male, are Masculines, as *Galba*, if Female are Feminines, as *locus*, but *filius* is Masculine, and *filia* feminine, both by signification and by termination.

All proper names, and many common Nouns referring to more knowne Appellatives will terminate the same, as in signification, so likewise in Gender, some few excepted, that follow the Termination constant to a certaine Gender.

Of Masculines following the more knowne Appellative.

The more knowne Appellatives being Masculines, do for the most part communicate the same Gender to all proper names, or less known Appellatives.

Appellatives subordinate therunto as Deus, Pan
 Angelus, Gabriel, Diabolus, Sathanas, fluvius O-
 rontes, but Avena, Gadir, be Neuters by the
 Terminations, constant to that Gender, Mons,
 Ossa, but Aena, is feminine, referring unto Ru-
 pes, Ventus, Lybs, but Ornithiz, is feminine, La-
 pis, Adamas, but Marmor is Neuter, and Chry-
 stallus feminine, referring unto Gemma, Piscis,
 Labrax, but Auxuma is feminine.

Of Feminines following their Appellatives.

The more known Appellatives being femi-
 nines, do in like sort transmit their Gender to
 their respective lesse known Appellatives, or to
 proper names belonging therunto, as Dea, Ju-
 no, furia Aleto, musa Clio, regio Persis, insula
 Cyprus, Urbs Pergamus, but Gabij, Hippo, Aca-
 gas, are Masculines Bactra, Lugdunum, Hispal,
 Proeneste, Argos, Tibur, Zeugma; be Neuters:
 Herba Baccharis; but Helleborus is Masculine,
 Arbor Pinus, but Pinaster is Masculine, navis Ar-
 go comedia Eunuchus, fabula Thyestes, but in
 these last Examples Synthesis doth sway the
 Gender.

Of Neuters knowne by signification.

Any part of Speech taken materially for the
 elementary parts of the word, are of the Neu-
 ter Gender, as Amicitia, for Amicitiz vocabulum,
 Etymologice sumptum, dictum est ab amo. Or ta-
 ken figuratively, as the Word of Adverb in-
 stead of a Substantive by Enallage, as scire tuum
 nihil est, for scientia tua; Cras aliud veniet, for
 Crastinus alter; And such are all Aptote Sub-
 stantives

Substantives, as Tempe, fas, Hæc, virus, sinapi, æo-
nu, nihil, fur, fur, pondo, Chaos, Hippomanes, pascha,
with other exotick, or peregrine words, refer-
ring to no Physicall sex, either male or fe-
male.

Of Genders knowne by termination.

Nouns Regular, that do not referre either to
a Physicall sex, or to any known Appella-
tive, are best discerned in their proper Gender,
by their Declensions, where accordingly their
proper Gender shall be specified.

Of Persons.

There be three Persons in both Numbers,
both of Nouns and Verbs distinguished each
from other: The first Person, as the speaker
singularly, ego doceo: plurally, nos Docemus.
The second Person is spoken to, singularly, in-
disces, plurally, vos discetis. The third Per-
son is spoken of singularly, ille advertat, plural-
ly, illi advertant. And all Nouns whatsoever be
of the third person, whether Substantives
(not apposed to ego, nos, tu, or vos) or Adjectives
that have not the same for their Substantives.
Marcobet, ego, nos, tu, and vos, are common-
ly understood with Verbs, being never expressed
but by way of restriction or amplification notifi-
ed by Conjunctions exceptive or Demonstrative,
as in the Syntax will be instanced.

Of Enallage.

By *Enallage* any part of Speech or their affections may be changed one for another; *populum late regem*, for *regnantem*; *Criminibus terrere novis*, for *terrebat*; Which with other variations, by Tropes and Synonymes, are very usefull for copiousness and elegance of expression, and are most necessary to gain or advance good skill in Poetry, as the meetest helps to prepare Phrases for metricall formes. Moreover *Enallage* hath obtained sundry names in sundry respects, being called *Antimeria*, when it changeth parts of Speech, or *Antiptosis*, when it changeth Cases, or *Heterosis* changing Genders or Declensions, or *Alloiosis* changing other affections.

Of literall and genuine formes

of *NOUNES*.

The Genuine formes commonly called the kinds of Nouns are two, the Substantives and the Adjectives, distinguished each from other three ways.

1. The Substantive hath a, or the before it, because understood of it selfe, and it answereth to the Question who or what, for clearing the sense of all other parts of speech toynd therewith in structure. But Adjectives have no such signe, because of themselves they have no perfect sense, but in reference to their Substantives. And therefore Adjectives agree with their Substantives, in Case, Gender, Number and Person.

2 The Substantive hath but one Gender, or two at the most, but Adjectives have all three Genders.

3 The Substantive regularly, hath but one ending in the same Case, but all Adjectives have two endings, in some Cases, and some Adjectives in some Cases have three divers endings.

Plus, and quid with its compounds, as quicquid, aliquid, and the like, are alwayes put Substantively. But such are sometimes other Adjectives of the neuter Gender, having quiddam, or negotium, or verbum, — in the Hebrew, or Chrema in the Greek Idiom, understood therewith, as *triste senex miles, turpe senilis Amor, horrida narrans*. Likewise other Adjectives of the Masculine or Feminine Gender, have known Substantives to be supplied therewith, as *omnis amicus, supply homo, Pinguis Perina, supply caro, una triremis, supply, navis, meus natalis, supply, dies*.

Of the variation of parts of Speech.

Substantives may be changed unto Adjectives, or contrariwise, and either of them to Verbs, or Adverbs, as *Ingenium Herois, heroicum ingenium, or ingeniosus Heros, pro dotum copia, or copiose dotatus, et quolibet loquere, or semper et ubique, clarescer, or audiet clarissimus, or clarissime*.

The formes or kinds of Substantives.

There be two kinds of Substantives.

1 Proper names belonging definitely to one, as *Homerus*. Or 2 Nouns Appellative and common, belonging indefinitely unto any of the same rank or condition, as *Poeta* belonging equally to any of the Poets.

The variation of Nouns proper or common.

Proper names by Tropes put on the nature of Appellatives signifying in a borrowed sense, not the persons, but their conditions, as *Hydra* for *Clades*, Metaphorically, *Nero*, for *Tyrannus*, Synecdochically, but such are used more commonly in the plurall as *Aristoteles* for *Philosophi*, *Alexandria*, for *Urbes imperatoria* by Synecdoche of the species, *Caui*, *Dacii*, *Fabricii*, for *ipsorum Liberi*, by a Metonymic of the cause, the Authors giving names unto their families.

Appellatives are contrariwise used for proper names Antonomastically as *Clades Lernensis*, for *Hydra Lernæa*, *Tyrannus*, for *Nero*, *Philosophus*, for *Aristoteles*, *Atrides*, for *Agamemnon*.

Proper names, or Appellatives may be changed one to another by Synonyms.

Paraphrastically.

Aegyptus for *tellus que fecundissima Nilo*, *Pluvie inscia regna*, *Arvum genitale Canopi*, *Deorum prodigiosa parens*.

Adulator: Qui vendit fucum fumumque, Morbus amicitiae, Mancipium veniris.

Proverbially.

Qui capiat ficum, Cauda blanditur, Sermonem sesamo condit, Rosas loquitur, Qui Vulpe benignior audit, Et pella patulas oleum distillat in aures.

Emblematically.

Chamaleon quemlibet colorem imitans, Corvus cadaverum oculos effodiens, Cervus et fistula, Apis in ore mel, sub cauda spiculum gerens, Lupus asinum citilans.

Aenigmatically.

Placentinorum potius quam Veronenarum soboles.

Tropologically.

Assentator by Synecdoche of the part; Parasitus, by a Metonymy of the adjunct, Palpo, Metaphorically fautor et fo or Ironically.

The formes or kindes of Adjectives.

Adjectives are of three sorts or kinds.

1. *Nounes betokening for the most part some quality.*

2. *Pronouns, Notifying alwayes the quantity.*

3. *Participles, Signifying an Active or Passive power, capable of intensification, and thereby differing from any act or passion, which hath alwayes some adsignificance of time proper to the Verbs, and inconsistent with intensification.*

The severall kindes or Formes of Pronounes.

Pronounes considered at large, are of two kinds, either Demonstratives when joyned with the; Substantives, they show a thing not spoken of before: or Relatives, when referring to their Substantives, construed in a former Sentence, and then called Antecedents; they referre a thing spoken of before.

Annotations.

The Pronounes considered strictly in their distinct formes of quantity are either, 1. Finite and singular, as *Ego tu sui ille ipse hic is and iste*; or 2. Indefinite, being either, 1. particular, as *nonnullus quidam aliquis*, or 2. universal, as *omnis nullus*. All which are called Redditives when they answer to *qui* or *quis*, the Interrogatives; And *quis* or such other desisting to be Interrogatives become Redditives, admitting diverse formes suitable to their structure.

These Possessives *meus tuus suus noster vester* *Homericus Ciceronianus*, and such like answering to the Interrogative *Cuius* may be sorted with finite Pronounes.

Other Possessives referring not to peculiar persons, but unto Countries, as *Atheniensis Romanus* *Libi Arpinas nostras vestras* with such other, answering to the Interrogative *Cuius*, may suit with the Indefinite; in which rank may be placed likewise all the rest that follow.

The Cardinall Pronounes, as *unus duo tres quatuor*, and the rest answering unto *Quot*.

The distributives, as *binij, triij* or *binarij, ternarij*, and the rest answering to *Quoteni*.

The multiplicatives, as *duplex triplex, &c.* answering unto *Quotuplex*.

The Ordinals, as *primus secundus tertius, &c.* answering unto *Quotus*.

The Proportionals, as *duplus triplus, &c.* answering unto *Quatuplus*.

The Temporals as *biduanus bimestris biennis*, answering to *Quotennis*.

The Frequentatives and Diminutives, as *multus minus paululus*, answering unto *Quantus*.

The Comparatives and Superlatives, as *doctior* and *doctissimus*, answering unto *Qualis*.

Ego in sui, being alwayes Substantives, have a property to be constant to their distinct persons, but any other will admit of any person agreeable to their Substantives; as *sui Caesarem defendamus*, or *defendat se pro suis* and *suis*, are called reciprocals, because they have immediate recourse to a precedent Substantive, either in the same Sentence, as *trahitque quemque volupis*, or *quisque sua voluptate trahitur*, or in a former sentence reducible to the same, as *voluptas magna est omnia laudentur sui*; or *voluptas sua laudat*, *hic ille*, and *ille* when they referre to *thir*, *hinc* doth point at the last and nearest; *ist* at the second nearest, *ille* at the first and furthest. And commonly *hic* and *ille* are limited in like manner; when they referre to two. But *ille* and *iste* compared together, *ille* referreth to the best, and *iste* to the basest.

Of the Variation of Pronounes.

Pronounes have much affinity with Adverbs, and are commonly interchanged therewith, whether Interrogatives, as *ubi*, for *quo die aut loco*; or

Redditives,

Redditives, as *hactenus*, for *usque ad hunc diem aut locum*; or Collectives, as *perimus una*, for *omnes*; or Distributives, as *deserimus singulatim* for *singuli*; or Numerals, as *Nummi dividuntur bipartito*, for *in duas partes*, and by way of equivalence; *Castra simul expugnantur ter quina*, for *quindecim*. Distributives passing for Cardinals, with Substantives that have no singular. Adverbs likewise supply Diminutives and Frequentatives, either by apposition, as *parum arguit, non satis facundus*; or by composition, as *subargutus, non perfacundus*, for *argutus, haud facundiosus*. More instances of remission, or intention, follow in the compounds of prepositional Adverbs. And it may be noted, that all Pronouns, as *implying*, a quantity may be used participatively, yet such as have not that sense properly, but adventitiously, will not admit the structure of the participles regularly; for it may be said, *facundiosus oratorum*, but *satis facundus*, or *perfacundus oratorum*, will be a barbarism.

A Relative may be put to substantives of continued signification; as *fucis arcent ignavum pecus*, or *qui sunt pecus ignavum*, or *qui sunt ignavi*. And it must necessarily be supplied with Vocatives after Obliques of the second person, or their Possessives; as *Do tibi Mari melum vinum, bibo Mari tuumque*, for *quies Mari*.

Relatives will change the Participle of the present Tense, to the Indicative; as *fac ludo desipiens*, or *qui desipit*, and Participials in *bitis*, or Futures in *aus*, to the Subjunctive, as *patrem vepries exorabilem*, or *exorandum*, or *qui exoratur*. And sometimes they are changed to Conjunctive Adverbs causal; as *Te saltem arbitror, qui*, or *quoniam probus audis*. Sometimes they cease by repetition of the

Antecedent,

Antecedent, with *si dum cum quia quoniam*: as *fat profecisti, cum* (or *cum tibi*) *Creto placuit*; *Scelus admittis quod* (or *quamvis scelus*) *abhorres*. And if both Sentences be Negatives, by changing the last to *nisi*, as *nullus homo miser, quem non* (or *nisi hominem*) *Deus odit*.

Interrogatives may be changed to their Redditives, with *Num* or such like Adverbs; (as *quot, or angustum, nunquid* &c) *labores dixisti, Quam paucas* (or *nonne paucas*) *reducis*.

These resolutions young Scollers should be trained to make readily, as their certaine Guide to finde out the structure of Interrogatives, at farre distance from the words, whetherto they do referre.

Likewise Relatives for the same end may be changed to Demonstratives, as *Stolidum reor, quem tam dilucida nedium intelligere constat*; or *si constat cum nedium intelligere tam dilucida*.

The figure of Nounes.

Be the figure Nounes are either permissive, as the originals not exceeding ordinarily one or two syllables, as *fortis, tristis*, or Derivatives, as descending thence, which if they come out of one original, are called *Simple*, and if from two or more, they are called *Compound*.

Of simple Nounes derivative.

Nounes simple derivative, are either Verbals, as *suadela, suaseria*, or adverbials, as *internus, extraneus*, or Denominatives, coming either from proper names, being patronymicals: as *Hectorides, Phoronis*, being Gentiles, as *Macedo, Libysa*; or from Appellatives, being Possessives, frequentatives

Frequentatives, Diminutives, Comparatives, or Superlatives, as herbarius, herbolus, herbula herbaceus, herbidior and herbidissimus.

The severall endings of Rones verbal.

Substantives end in a, antia arium arius Scriba ia-
stantia auctarium emissarius, ber. bra. brum. bula, bu-
lum, tuber scatebra ventilabrum fabula, stabulum, crum
culum, sulcrum, vinculum, and by syncope vinculum
do. uredo ela, entia, es, ens, suadela, sapientia,
reges abigeus, 'go, imago, tor imitago, ia, il, ile, io, is
ius, furia, pugil, cubile, legio, messis, genius, lum, ja-
culum; men, mentium, mas, monia, solamen, alimen-
tum, fomes, alimonia, na, num, nus, urina regnum cole-
nus. or, dolor, trina, tru, trum, trus, tum, doctrina
tonitru, aratrum, tonitrus, viridum, ver, ul, ulis, ul-
tus, ur, us, cadaver, consul, curulis, tumultus, fulgur,
mergus, ex. ux. vindax, dux. Supine Verbs end
in io. sor. sorium, sum, sura, sus: as censa, censor,
censorium, pensum, censura, census: tio. tor. torium,
trix. trum, tum, tura, tus. lectio, lector, tensorium, mo-
trix, lectum, lectum, lectura, lectus. xamen. xio. xor.
xarium. xum, xura, xus. flexamen, flexio, xior, xio-
rium, xitum, flexura, nexus.

Adjectives end in arius, affluens, bilis, bris, hum-
dus, flebilis, lugubris, palatundus, cer, cris, trus, cu-
lus, cundus, ens. vuluer, vulueris, ludicrus, ridiculus.
iracundus caducus. dis, dus, viridis, pallidus, er. es,
piger, deses, ilis, trus, jas, vilis, for visibilis, felicis,
anxius, las, nus, vias, rus, vlcus ious, us, nus,
ar. ox. pendulus, plenus, oratorius, avarus, bilucus,
sativus, probus, caduus, tenax, pracox.

The severall endings of Nounes adverbiall.

Adverbiall Adiectives end in *aneus*, *arius* extra-
neus, *contrarius*, *cus*, *anticus*. *er*. *ernus*, *erus*, *exter*,
externus, or *exterus*, *gnus*, *benignus*, in *quis*, *propin-*
quus, *ius nimis*, *dignus*, *tinus*, *perendinus*, *diutinus*,
and such like of time, and *mediastinus* of place, ex-
cept such Nounes are compounded with *tenus*.

Sundry endings of Denominatives from proper Names.

Patronymicks Masculine, end in *ader*, *idex*, *ion*;
and Plurall in *ade*, or *ida*, *Archisiades*, *Iliades*,
Monotades *Atlantiades*, *Acacides*, *Pelides*, *Japeti-*
on, *Oedipodion*, *Aeneada*, *Romulide*, *Aegide*. Fe-
minines end in *as*, *ine*, *is*, *one*. *Thestias*, *Ilias*, *Peli-*
as, *Phaetontias*, *Nerine*, *Adrastine*, *Acrisone*, *Nere-*
is, *Inachis*, *Latois*; whereto may be added Masculines in *ea*, as *Donatista*, *Jacobita*, and such other, denominating Sectaries from their first Authors.

Gentile Substantives have for endings *an*, *ar*, *as*,
ax. *Aeternan* *Car* *Areas*, *Nostras*, *Thrax*. *ens*. *er*. *es*,
essa, *Laurens*, *Ser*, *Gres*, *Gressa*. *ibi*. *ida*. *ins*. *ir*. *is*. *if-*
ja. *ix*. *Libs*, *Numide*, *Tyrins*, *Trevir*, *Sannit*, *Anthi-*
opissa, *Ullix*. *o*. *on*. *ops*. *or*. *ox*. *Brito*, *Laron*, *Acibi-*
ops, *Fros*, *Capadox*. *ia*. *tes*. *us*. *Israelita*. *Spartiates*,
Spartians. *ur*. *urs*. *us*. *Ligur*, *Tiburis*, *Anglus*, *ys*,
ysa, *yx*. *Libys*, *Libysa*, *Paphz*.

Gentile Adiectives Possessive have terminati-
ons, *anus*, *arius*, *aticus*, *Romanus*, *Dardanarius*, *Apol-*
loniaticus. *ensis*, *onus*, *inus*, *eus*. *Atheniensis*, *Aby-*
denus, *Aetneus*, *Maroneus*, *iacus*, *icus*, *iur-*
inus. *Aegyptiachs*, *Aegypticus*, *Aegyptius*, *Agrigenti-*
us.

Terminations

Adjectives ending in *alis*, *anus*, *aris*, *filialis*, *montanus*, *familiaris*, *ber. bris. cer. cris. cus.* *saluber*, *muliebris*, *alacer*, *alacris*, *magicus*, *ensis* *ernus. cus.* *castrensis*, *paternus*, *meus*, *avreus*, *inus. itimus. ius. ivus. vicinus*, *legitimus*, *regius*, *festivus*, *ster. stis. stris. stus. uus. noster*, *caelestis*, *campestris*, *honestus*, *tuns*, *annuus*. All which respectively may be possessive.

Frequentatives end usually in *tus. idus. lentus. licus. lus. orus. olus.* *fortunatus*, *berbidus*, *violentus*, *famelicus*, *nubilus*, *Uxorius*, *piscosus*. Diminutives being both Substantives and Adjectives, noting always an abatement, and that often with indignity, and sometimes with flattery, and seldome with modesty, do end in *ella. ellum. ellus. opella. flagellum. cultellus*, or *illa. illum. illus. mamilla. sigillum. pugillus. tantillus. ola. olium. olum. olus. fiola. epistolum. ingenium. filiolus. ula. ulcus. ululus. ulum. ulus. adolescentula. equuleus. homulus. frustulum. adolescentulus. ridiculus. senecio. homuncio. flosculus. discaculus. grandiusculus. ramunculus. fio. ster. pusio. Grammaticaster.*

Materialls end in *aceus. alis. arius. aticus. bordeacens. aqualis. aquarius. aquaticus. etrus. eus. cus. inus. ius. itius. quercetus. quercens. quercicus. quercinus. quercius. lateritius. gnus. abiegnus*, if it be not compounded with *genus*, *lanus. quernulanus*, or *querculanus. neus. nus. querveus. quernus.*

Comparatives end constantly in *or*, and Superlatives in *mus*, as *prior. primus.*

Of forming Comparatives and Superlatives.

Adjectives whose Signification may increase or be diminished, being put absolutely without excellence, as durus hard, are called Positives, or somewhat exceeding the positive in a proportion, between two having the English ending in er, or the same more set before it, as harder or more hard be called Comparatives, or surpassing all others of like kind, having the English ending in est, or the same most before it as hardest, or most hard, be called Superlatives.

Comparatives and Superlatives are both formed from their Positives ending in i, whereto the Comparatives adds the termination or, and the Superlatives add issimus, so durus maketh durior and durissimus, likewise tristis maketh tristior and tristissimus.

Exceptions.

Positives that end in er and ur apocoped have rimus put thereto, in forming the Superlatives, as niger nigerrimus, celer celerrimus, matur maturissimus, And some few that end in lis, change that to llimus, as humilis humillimus, so facilis and similis with their Compounds and with some Authors, gracilis, agilis, docilis, but with others these three last keep the General Rule, and all Adjectives besides, which end in lis, as nobilis nobilior nobilissimus.

Of irregular Comparatives and Superlatives.

Some Adiectives are used onely to one of the three former degrees in signification, as for example. To the Superlative onely *maximus*, *minimus*, *optimus*, *pessimus*. To the Comparative onely *maior*, *minor*, *melior*, *prior*. To the Positive onely, as all Nounes either incapable of intension and remission, being extreames; as *aeternus*, *momentaneus*, *praecipuus*, *gregarius*; or equall in their condition; whether first of nature, being Nounes materiall, as *faginus*; or signifying the Species of time or place, as *bimulus*, *diurnus*, *meridionalis*; or being derivatives from proper names, as *Paschalis*, *Eous*: or of relation, as all Pronounes being pronominally taken for *tuissimus*, as *patriusissimus*, and *Neronior* is used for *sibi simillimus*, deposing the proper tense, or of adsignificance; being Participles of the first Future, never admitting a comparison, because they never faile to signifie an expresse time. But Participles of the second Future, are used onely to the Superlative, and that with late Writers, nor with Classick Authors. And Participles of the Present & the Pretenses, when they desist to signifie time, do become Nounes, and admit Comparisons; as *amans*, *amantior*, *amanissimus*, *doctus*, *doctior*, *doctissimus*.

Other Adiectives are by use unmoveable, which end in *ar*. or *ur*. *bundus* *crus*. *cus*. *eps*. *es*. *eus*. *iur*. *lus*. *mus*. *ster*. *sus*. *uus*. seldome admitting a Comparative, or Superlative degree, saving by a supplement of *magis*, and *maxime*, or such like, answering to more and most, the signes thereof in english,

as the Positive *dispar*, hath for Comparative *magis dispar*, for the Superlative *maxime dispar*, and so in the rest.

Some Adjectives want the Positive onely, as *plus plurimum*, *deterior deterrimus*, *magnificentior magnificentissimus* and such like Compounds of *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*.

Some want Comparatives onely, as *consultus*, *diversus*, *falsus*, *fidus*, *inclutus*, *invictus*, *invisus*, *invictus*, *meritus*, *novus*, *nuperus*, *pius*, *sacer*, *strenuus*.

Some Adjectives want onely the Superlatives, as *adolescens*, *ingens*, *juvenis*, *salutaris*, *satur*, *senex*, *taciturnus*, and *proximus*, imitating a Positive doth make *proximior* onely.

The variation of Comparatives and Superlatives.

Comparatives or Superlatives leaving the nature of Partitives, are used absolutely for Positives; as *celerior celerissimus*, or *celerius celerissime*, but adverbially, for *celer*, or *celeriter*.

Likewise Comparatives may take the place of Superlatives, as *multo præstantior omnibus ille*, for *præstantissimus omnium*. And contrariwise Superlatives may take the place of Comparatives, *fidissimus ille duorum*, for *fidelior*.

Superlatives may be changed and diversly rendered, either by Adverbs of intension put unto the Positive, as *apprime doctus*, *perdite nefarius*, *nequicquam infaustus*, *undique probus*; or by Adverbs of remission with a Negative, as *haud parum*, or *mediocriter letus*, or with Adverbs of likeness, referring to singularity, as *albus ut nix*, or tropologically, when proper Names or some Appellatives stand for

for Adiectives; as *Theseus*, for *fidissimus*, *decus et tutela Pelasgum*, for *inclutissimus*, and such others.

Some Positives have the force of Superlatives affirmatively, as *princeps omnium*: or negatively, *nulli secundus*; or any Positive construed with a Genitive plurall of its owne Substantive, as *impiger fluminum*, *nigra lanarum*. Superlatives may be expressed by Hebraismes, as *putum putum argentum*, *stos florum*, *sapiens consiliariorum*, *vir sanguinum*, *populus electionis*, *dulcis præ nectare*, *excelsus supra Gentes*. Superlatives may be implied in Paraphrases, as *vir, si quisquam altus*, *bonæ frugi*, *imperium obtinens*, *nulli cedens*, *parem nusquam inventurus*, *palmæ dignus*, *nullum non superans*, and such others.

Of Compounds.

Compounds come either from entire words, whether two rectis and both Substantives, as *jusjurandum*; or two rectis, the one a Substantive, and the other an Adiective, as *respublica*, or both rect Adiectives, as *alteruter*; or a rect and oblique both Substantives, as *paterfamilias*, or oblique and rect, both Adiectives, as *levideus*; or oblique Substantive, and rect Adiective, as *jurisperitus*, or two rect Adiectives, with an Adverb, as *unusquisq;* where all rectis are onely variable, and the rest unmoveable. Or Compounds come from words impaired, commonly the former, as *grandævus*; sometimes both, as *aprugnus*: Sometimes words compounded be of divers tongues, as *epitogium*; *parisyllabicum ambastus*: Sometimes the simples are oblolet saving in composition, either both, as *completus*, or the former as *difficilis vesanus*, or the latter, as *defensio*, and such are all encliricals, as *egometæte*, *idem quidam*, *quispiam*, *quicunq;* *hicce*, *suapte*. Some for eu-

phony take increase of letters, as *redius*, and some change the first Vowell of the latter simple, as *imicus*, *perimax*. Moreover Compounds with Clasick Authers, are much more in use then the simple words, both as more significant, tending to briefe descriptions, and as affording more variety in the resolutions, whereof the first is found in composition of Nounes and Verbes, instanced in the variation of Substantives, and the other in Composition of Nounes or Verbes, with prepositionall Adverbes, which will be instanced in that place.

The peculiar affections of Nounes.

Affections proper unto Nounes, are three, Case, Declension, and Gender.

Of Cases.

Cases are divers endings of Nounes in either of both numbers, being regularly foure, the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative.

Of the Nominative.

The Nominative called also the Rect, in opposition to al other Cases, called Obliques, goeth before a Verb Personall, which doth agree therewith in person and number, or else cometh after a verb substantive in apposition to the Nominative going before it, as *necessitas est artium magistra*.

Annotations.

Some Greek Nounes are found irregular, being redundant in the Nominative singular of some Declension

Declensions by casting away *s*. as *Thomas*, *Thoma*, *Erbytes*, *Chryse*, in the first, *Orpheus*, *Orphen*, in the second, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*, *Aias*, *Aia*, *Pallas*, *Palla*, *Alexis*, *Alexi*, *Paris*, *Pari*, *Simoeis*, *Simoei* in the third. All which are proper names, and some Latine Nouns Appellatives, cast away *us*, as from *meus*, being with old Authors *mius* cometh *mi*, from *genius*, *gens*, from *filius* *fili*, and from all proper names, as *Caius* *Cai*, *Georgius* *Georgi*, *Amilius* *Amili*, and such like. And all other both proper and common Nouns of the second Declension ending in *us* (*Deus* only excepted) will change *us* to *e*. imitating therein Nouns of the third Declension in the Greek, as *optime Feste nequaquam infansio*

Lastly all Nounes in such redundant Terminations being rectes, because they are never derived from the Genitives, are only of the second person, singular spoken to, and therefore called Vocatives to distinguish them from the regular Terminations, which are used indifferently for any of the three persons.

Of the Genitive.

The Genitive is so called, because thence are formed all other Obliques and Derivatives, may be known in English by the sign of before it, or by the encliticall *s*. added therunto, and in latine by being the latter of two Substantives, that have others significations, as *Discipuli* *Magister*, the *Master* of the *Schollar*, or the *Scholars* *Master*. But the Genitive continued with adjectivall Nouns or Verbs have the former Substantives understood, being easily to be supplied, as the more known Appellatives,

referring to their subordinate species of place, time, praise, price, crime, punishment, order, measure, or some peculiar respect, as vivit Romæ, supply Urbe, abest bidui, supply spacio vel itinere, ejusmodi est probitatis, supply Virtute, venalis terrencii, supply precio, reus furti, supply crimine damnatus exilii, supply pœna, poetarum doctissimus, supply ordine, or numero, liber sex digitorum crassus, supply mensura, inops fide, promissorum dives, rerum suarum satagit, alienarum immemor, supply ratione. *Moreover* Genitives being the latter of two Substantives, are often changed to the Datives, as filius Heri, or Hero,

Of the Dative.

The Dative is construed with any part of Speech, being either put acquisitebely with reference to the end or object, having in English the signs to, or for, as obviat, or venit obviam, or obvius mihi, or else Ablativebely with reference to some cause, part, or specifical circumstance, having the signs from, through, in, with, by, & after the Comparative degree, the signe then, being the English of prepositional Adverbs expressly put there to, or otherwise understood therewith, as ab Italia discessit, quia præ ebrietate bacchabatur, postmodum Athenis exceptus, herbis sanatus est a Medico, sociis omnibus sobrior.

Annotations.

The Ablative in regard of a redundant termination found only in the singular, not of all, but some Declensions, hath passed for a distinct Latin case, which the Greek, a mother tongue unto the

Latin

Latine hath never owned.) And therefore it were more equall to account the same a redundant Dative by the same law, whereby the Vocative is concluded to be a redundant Nominative. For to make either of them a distinct case, would require the same to have a distinct ending in both numbers and all Declensions, according to an equall Rule required alike in every Case, wherein both these redundants faile. Moreover (as the Nominative is frequently used to the second Person (for a Vocative) so the regular Dative is often used premiscuously for the redundant Ablative, as *proximus Regi*, or *a rege*, *id mihi*, or *meum commune*, *alienus ambitioni*, or *ambitione*, or *atori*, or *ab oratore diversus est Poeta*, *tibi* or *a te fama petatur*, *Virgilius Homero comparatur*, or *cum Homero*, *formido tibi*, or *de te*, *chori*, or *robore fidens*, *tibi*, or *tecum certabo*, *vitia hec insunt amoris*, or *in amore*, *vosmet eripite flamme* or *flamma*, with many more.

Of the Accusative.

The Accusative called in Greek the *Causative*, as pointing ordinarily at some cause, followeth a Verb transitive, being the Accusative or Dependent, or a Verb neuter being of the same signification with it, or else goeth before an infinitive mood, as *veritatem tueri*, *haud facile stare Judicis est*, *villicus propectam aetatem vivens*, *suam senectutem priari dedignatur*.

Observe the Accusative construed with Verbs neuter of different signification from it is Ellipticall, having understood therewith either an infinitive of some Verb Transitive, or more commonly some prepositional adverb, as *Id possumus*, supply *agere*, *quod probos esse*, for *apud*

apud probos, but most usually the Prepositions
 being thereunto are expressed therewith, as per
 mare veniunt in Britanniam.

Of Declensions.

All variable Nounes are ranged according to
 their mutuall Analogy among themselves, to
 five distinct forms, and thence are called Nounes
 of the first, or second, or third, or fourth, or fifth
 Declension; for the Declension is a distinct
 form or way of varying Nounes, according to
 their severall Cases or Terminations.

Annotations.

Nounes of the two first Declensions are parisyl-
 labicall, having like number of Syllables in all
 Cases, save in the Genitive plurall of both, and in
 the Dative plurall of moveable Substantives, in the
 first onely, as *dearum, deabus, deorum*.

Nounes of the three last Declensions are impa-
 risyllabicall, taking the increase of a Syllable in
 sundry oblique Cases, which increase some Nounes
 of the third Declension have in all the obliques
 thence.

Nounes both Substantive and Adjectives of the
 Neuter Gender, in the Nominative and Accu-
 sative, both singular and plurall, of any Declen-
 sion do end alike, and in the plurall do end onely
 in *a*, few Pronounes excepted, as *hoc, quod, ambo*,
 and *duo*, being all irregular, whereof in the Hec-
 roelines,

Nounes of the third Declension, whether Ma-
 culines or Fæminines, or both, end alike in the No-
 minative and Accusative plurall. And Nounes of
 the fourth end alike, not onely in those two Cases
 but

but also in the Nominative and Genitive singular; and Nounes of the fifth end alike in the Nominative singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative plurall. And Nounes both of the first and fifth end alike in the Genitive and Dative Singular.

Lastly, it is of most concernment farre above any other, that Schollers be well versed, and very perfect in the Declensions of Nounes and Conjugations of Verbes; the onely parts of Speech variable by proper affections: And for that purpose the distinct Termination proper to every Case of each Declension, should be made familiar to them; that by casting of the same from any Oblique, the word then having for its last bound the Characteristicall letter, which is alwaies that next preceding the termination of the Nominative; Learners may with ease change the termination of such Obliques to the proper ending of the Rect, or Nominative in the same Declension, as for instance; *filii* by termination is a Dative plurall of the first Declension, take thence *abus*, and the word doth end in *i*, being the Characteristicall, then put thereto *a*, the termination of the Rect in that Declension, and it will be *filii*, which any Novice may decline accordingly, but without such certaine prescrip^t to finde out the Rect, hee will faile therein. So *pueri* by termination is an Accusative plurall of the second Declension, take thence *os*, and the word will bee *puer*, whereto *us* the proper ending of the Rect in that Declension should bee added, were it not apocopated, so from *fab'ros*, take away *os*, it will bee *fab'r*, and being no proper ending, it may be understood that such words are syncopated in all the Obliques, whence *e*, the middle Syllable is cut off, and must bee restored to the Rect, making it *saber*. In

the third Declension, affording greatest difficulty in such Nounes, as do increase in the Genitive singular ; a recourse should be made to the sundry endings of Rects therein, and good notice taken of the sundry endings of the Genitive singular, belonging often to the same ending of the Rect, and by a reduction of the terminations of other Obliques, to the termination of that Genitive, the Rects proper ending will soon be found by Analogy with particular instances in that Declension, as for example ; in *partibus*, change *tibus*, a termination of the Dative plurall to *tis*, an ending of the Genitive singular, and by rule *partis* must come from *pars* ; so in *remigum*, *laticum*, change *gum*, and *cum*, to *gis*, and *tis*, both by rule come from *ex*, the proper ending of the Rect, changing *e*, to *i*, and in *limites*, change *tes*, to *tis*, and *limitis* will come from the Rect *limes*, changing likewise *e*, to *i*, and casting away *s* : in *vulnera*, change *era*, to *eris*, and by rule *vulneris* will come from the Rect *vulnus*. And in words of the fourth and fifth Declension the former Rules will serve.

Of the first Declension.

Latine Nounes of the first Declension do end only in *a*, being by termination Feminine, and are declined as in the Example following.

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Und-a.	a.	a vcl a.	am.

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
a.	arum.	is.	as.

Annotations

Annotations.

Greek Nouns Substantive of this Declension end in *as*, and *es*, which in Latine will both end in *a*, and others end also in *e*. And hebrew Nouns end in *am*, or *as*, which latine-like will end in *amus*, as from *Abraham*, or *Abrahams*, *Abrahamus*. And all be declined as in examples following.

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Satrap-as vel a.	æ	ævela.	am vel an.
Athlet-es vel a.	æ.	ævela.	am vel en.
Epitom-e	es.	e.	en.
Ad-am vel as.	æ.	ævela.	am.

The plurall as in Latine Nounes.

Substantives of this Declension answering to the first or second in the Greek may be of any Gender, except the neuter, for Greek Nouns ending in *e* are feminines, as *Epitrope*; or ending in *as*, or *es*, or made thence to end in *a* be Masculines, as *tiaras* & *tiara*, *planetes* and *planeta*, or Nouns that end in *a*, & do betoken humane conditions belonging to both sexes, are of the Common of twoby signification, as *advena*, *verna*; or referring to noe certaine sex may be of the Doubtfull gender by authority, as *Talpa*: or being Appellatives of bruit creatures, may be epicœnes. as *vipera*, *Simia*.

Of the Genitive Singular.

With old Authors, Nounes ending in a vowell before *a*, or ending in *ra*, or *na*, have the Genitive singular in *as* Greek-wise, as *dux vias*, for *vias*, *impetus auras*, *filius Latonas*: And old Poets have changed *a* to *ai*. as *Aulai*, *Pistai*, *Geryonai*, for *aulæ*, *pistæ*, *Geryonæ*.

Of

Of the Dative singular.

The Dative singular is constantly redundant in this Declension and in none other besides this.

Of the Genitive plurall.

The Genitives plurall of Nouns Patronymick, and Gentile, and Nouns compounded of *colō*, and *gigno* are often Syncopated, as *Aeneadum*, *spartiatum*, *callicolum*, *Terrigenum*, the two first of these ending Greekwise in the common tongue, being Paçifyllabicall in all cases, as *Aeneade*, *Aeneadon*, which by the Bœotick or Aeolick dialect may end in *as* as *Aeneidæon*. And Latine Nounes do imitate the same Dialect, having *r*, inserted between *a* and *um*, as in *Anidarum*.

Of the Dative plurall.

Some moveable Substantives ending in *us* of the second, and in *a* of this Declension, have therein a redundant Dative plurall, as *nata* maketh *nais*, common to it with *natus*, and *natabus* proper to it selfe, for distinction of the Genders, as the Nounes redundant in the rest distinguish persons.

Of Nounes redundant being of this and other Declensions.

Some proper names are redundant, being of this and the second Declension, as *Hierosolyma Hierosolima*, and *Hierosolyma Hierosolymorum*. And some Appellatives are of this Declension in the plurall, and of the second in the singular, as *epulum epuli*, and *epula epularum*. Others of this, and the third, as *Pascha Pasche*, and *Pascharis*, *Orontes Orontæ* and,

and *Oroxis*, *Chalcas* *Chalcæ*, and *Chalcantis*.

Of the second Declension.

Latine Nouns of the second Declension, are constantly either in *um*. being all neuter, or *us*. or in (*er* and *ur*) having *us* apocopated, being Masculines by termination, except some such being feminines, and all be declined, as in the example following.

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Ov-um	i.	o.	um.
Alv-us yete.	i.	o.	um.
Puer	i.	o.	um.
Li-ber	bri.	bro.	brum.

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
a.	orum.	is.	a.
i.	orum.	is.	os.
i.	orum.	is.	os.
bri.	brorum.	bris.	brös.

In this Declension *vir* with all Substantives ending in *er*. and Adjectives ending in *er* and *ur*, have *us* apocopated, and both Substantives, and Adjectives ending in *er*, not having a vowel, or halfe vowel going before *er*. be so the most part syncopated in all the obliques, as *vir* for *virus*, *vir*, *viro*, *miser* for *miserus*, *miseri*, *misero*, *satur*, for *saturus*, *saturi*, *saturo*, *not* *faber*, for *faberus*, *fabri*, *fabro*, and *sacer*, for *sacerus*, *sacri* *sacro*. Some are excepted, as *adulter*, *presbiter*,

fer, socer, alter, asper, celtiber, gibber, lacer, liber (the Adjective) prosper, dexter, making dexteri or dextri, and all Compounds of gero, - and fero, which are never syncopeated, as armiger, armigeri, stellifer, stelliferi. Whosoever all Adjectives in the second termination being feminine, are of the first Declension, but in the first and third being Masculines and neuters are of this Declension, and are thus declined.

Singulariter.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
{ Procer-	us vele	i.	d.	um.
	a,	x.	x vela.	am.
	um,	i.	o.	um.

Pluraliter.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
{	i.	orum.	is.	os.
	x.	arum.	is.	as.
	a.	orum.	is.	a.

Some Pronouns in the Genitive singular do end in ius, and some in jus. and both in the Dative end in i. as unus una unum, unius, uni, being either of the regular, as alio totus, solus, and alter, uer, ullus, with their Compounds, but ille ipse iste, with is ejus ei, qui cujus cui, and hic hujus huic are more irregular, whereof in the Heteroclitis.

Annotations.

Greek Nouns of this Declension in the Nominative singular end in *os. on. us. and eus.* and are thus declined.

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Byssus vel e.	i.	o.	um.
Barbit. on.	i.	o.	on.
Ath. os.	os.	os.	on vel o
Thes. eus vel eu. ci. v. eos. co v. ci. cum v. ca.			

The pluralls as in Latine.

Substantives of this Declension answering to the third and fourth of the simple, and to the third of the contracts in the Greek, may be of any Gender except the Common of two; For besides Masculines most usuall in this Declension of Nouns both Greek & Latine, ending in *os*, or in *us*, many Greek Nouns changing *os* to *us*, and few latine Nouns in *us*, are feminines, as for instance.

Anridotus costus methodus byssusq; papyrus

Nardus & byssopus dialectus eremus & arctus

Græca, latina colus vannus domus alvus humusq;

Likewise *pampinus* is doubtfull, and *elephantus, epicæne.* And *Symbolon*, with all such other Greeke Nounes are Neuters.

Of the Genitive Singular.

The Genitive Singular ending in *ij*, is often apocopated, as *sua cura peculi*, for *peculij*.

Of the Nominative Plurall.

The Nominative Plurall with some old Authors, doth end in *ei*, as *captivei*, for *captivi*.

Of the Genitive Plurall.

The Genitive Plurall is often syncopated, but mostly with Poets, as *Chara deum soboles*, for *deorum*, but it happeneth very seldome in the Neuter Gender, as *duellum*, for *duellorum*.

Nounes redundant being of this and other Declensions.

All Adiectives of three divers endings are redundant, being of this and the first Declension; as *bonus bona bonum*, some Nounes are of this and the third Declension, as *sequester, sequestri, and sequestris; glomus, glomi, and glomeris; vesper, vespers, and vesperis; polypus, polypi, and polypodis. Perseus, Persei, and Perseos*. Other Nounes are redundant in the Genitive plurall onely, as *Bacchanalia, Bacchanaliorum, and Bacchanium: ancilia, anciliorum, & ancilium*; And so *sponsalia, vestigalia*. Others are redundant in the Dative plurall onely; as *poemata, poematis, and poematibus, or poemati*. Other redun-
dants in the Singular bee of this, and in the Plurall of the third Declension; as *iugerum, ingeri, and iugera, iugerum, iugeribus*; being both formerly Nounes moveable, but now obsolet, saving that *iugeris, and iugere*, of the Genitive and Dative ablativall singular bee still in use.

Of the third Declension.

Nounes of the third Declension do end in three Vowels, *a e o*, and in seven Consonants, *s*

1 a r s t x. Amongst which the Terminations
 a c c t. and both us, and or, increasing short in
 substantives, & us increasing long in Monosylla-
 bles; & al Adjectives of the Comparative degree,
 be alwaies Neutrals. And al. el. en. ar. ur. be most-
 ly Neuter endings, but admit Exceptions,
 Aus. or ys. or us. increasing long, or os. making
 oris. are alwaies Feminine by Termination.
 And for the most part such are Substantives
 that end in as. or is. or x. or s. with another Con-
 sonant, and Polissyllables Derivative in o. and
 Parissyllables in es. but some of such endings
 admit Exceptions, Or, and os. making oris. be
 alwaies Masculines and ordinarily Dissyllables
 primitive in o and Imparissyllables in on. and
 es. and er. being syncopated, the severall Excep-
 tions to this last, and to the former Gender
 follow next after the former, by which such
 Nounes must be declined, as in these Ex-
 amples.

Nav-is.

Lau-s.

Pec-us.

Felix Trist-is

Singulariter

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Turr-is.	is.	i. vel e.	em, vel im.
Lau-s.	dis.	di vel de.	dem.
Pect-us.	oris.	ori vel ore.	us.
Fal-ix.	icis.	ici vel ice.	icem & ix.
Trist-is & c.	is.	i. vel e.	em & c.

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
cs.	ium.	ibus.	es.
des.	dum.	dibus.	des.
ora.	orum.	oribus.	ora.
ices & icia.	icium.	icibus.	ices & icia.
es & ia.	ium.	ibus.	es & ia.

Annotations.

Nounes of this Declension answering to the fifth of the Simples, and to the first, second, and fifth of the Contracts in the Greeke; have all seven Genders, and some few exotick, either Greeke Appellatives, or Hebrew proper Names, have two more Terminations, the one in *y*, the other in *id*. as *moly molyos*, Neuter by Termination, *David, -Davidis*; Masculine by signification, declined regularly like the rest,

A. and *e.* in this Declension are terminations of Nounes Neuter onely; as *problema problematis, cubile cubilis, mania manium*. *O.* in Nounes Primitive of two Syllables, is a termination Masculine: as *orda ordinis, sermo sermonis*; and in these Nounes of

of many Syllables, *pugio pugionis*, *scipio titio*, *senio ternio*. But *caro*, *carnis* not increasing is Fœminine, and so is *grando grandinis*, with all Derivatives of many Syllables ending in *do*, and *go*; as *dulcedo dulcedinis*, *prurigo pruriginis*, except *harpago harpaginis*, a Greeke Noun. Masculine. Likewise derivative Verbals, and Denominatives, ending in *io*, bee Fœminines; as *lectio lectionis*: so *legio*, *concio*; with *communio*, *ditio*, *ratio*, *rebellio*, *perduellio*; lastly, *Hiericho Hierichuntis*, by signification is Fœminine; But *bubo bubonis*, is of the doubtful Gender, and *hirundo hirundinis*, an Epicene.

C. and *g.* are endings of Neuters onely, as *caput capitis*, *lac lactis*; *halec* is an Aptece; for *halecis* doth come from *halex* a Fœminine.

Al, and *el*, are Neutrall endings; as *mel mellis*, *animal animalis*; but *sal*, in a different sense is Neutrall, or Masculine, in the Singular, but masculine onely in the Plurall, used for *facete*.

Il. ol. and *ul.* are Masculine endings, as *mugil mugilis*, which with old Authors was Parisyllabicall, *sol solis*, *exul exulis*: which last is accounted common, but good Authors say *exulem* & *vagam reducit*, or *vagam ab exilio*, not *vagam exulem*.

An. in. on. are Masculine terminations, as *Pean Peanis*, *Evan Evantis*, *Delphis* or *Delphin*, *Delphinis*. *Xenophon Xenophontis*, by signification and termination Masculines: and *agon agonis*, *canon canonis*, by termination onely: But *Sindon Sindonis*, is Fœminine, and *halcyon halcyonis*, *aedon aedonis* Epicenes.

En. is a Neutrall ending, as *lumen luminis*, but *pecten pectinis*, *ren renis*, and *splen, licen, lien*, are Masculines.

Ar. and *ur.* bee Neutrall terminations, as *calcar calcaris*, being formerly Parissyllabicall, *hepar*, for *hepas*, by *antribesis*, *hepatis*: *sax* *sarris*, for difference from *faris*, *satur*, *mur* *mur* *murmuris*, *secur* *securis*, and *securis*, by *Epenthesis*, or from an obsolete *seimus*, but *salar* *salaris*, and *fursur* *fursuris*, bee Masculines, *turtur* and *vulvur* Epicœns.

Er. is a Masculine termination, as *imber imbris*, *alacer alacris*, *pater patris*, *campester campestris*, with many more both Substantives and Adjectives, syncopated in all Obliques, after *b. c. e.* *ether etheris*, *crater crateris*, *puer*, and *puer* by *Antribesis*, *pueris*, except *uer* syncopated, for *itiner itineris*, *ver veris*, *cadaver cadaveris*. And *cicer*, *laser*, *spinther*, *piper*, *papaver*, Neuters, with *sicer*, *laver*, which as Herbes be Fœminines by signification: But *linter linteris*, *clyster clysteris* bee of the doubtfull Gender, and *passer passeris* an Epicœne.

Or. increasing long is a Masculine ending, as, *honor*, and *honor* by *antribesis*, *honoris*, but *arbor arboris*, is Fœminine, and *cor cordis* Neuter, with *ador*, or *ados adoris*, *equor*, *marmor*, and all others increasing short.

Tr. is a termination of Greeke Nounes, being the common of two by signification; as *martyr martyr-
ris*.

As. a termination of Nounes increasing, is Fœminine; as *pietas pietatis*, *lampas lampadis*, except *vas vadis*, and *as assis*, which with all ponderals derived thence, as *bes besis*, *semis*, or *semis*, *missis*, *decunx decuncis*, *dodrans dodrantis* are Masculines, so are likewise *Gigas gigantis*, and *mas maris*, by signification; but *vas vasis* is Neuter.

Aus. is a termination Fœminine: as *laus laudis*.

Es. is a termination Feminine of parissyllabi-
call Nounes, as *nubes nubis*, and a Masculine end-
ing of imparissyllabicals, as *pes pedis*, *terres terre-*
ris, *somes somitis*, *liber libetis*; but *Chremes* making
Chremis, and *Chremetis*, is by signification Masculine,
so are *abies abietis*, *Ceres Ceteris* Feminines, *Ca-*
aris is Neuter, *vepres vepres*, *palumbes palumbis*, and
ales alitis are of the doubtfull Gender, and *virides*
Epicene. Nounes plurall onely thar end in *es*, do
analogically keep such Gender as they should bee
of, were they regular, and had the singular, as *am-*
bagas Feminine, and *natales* Masculine, because
ambages, and *natalis* their singulars would bee
such.

Is. of Nounes increasing, or not increasing, is
mostly a termination Poeminine as *navis navis*, *cus-*
pis cuspidis, *genesis geneseos* or *genesios*, *charis*
charitos, so *Themis* making *Themis* or *Themidis*, or
Themissis, and *Salamis* or *Salamina* *Salaminis*, are by
signification feminine; likewise *Simoeis* *Simoenis*,
is by signification masculine. Some imparissyllabi-
cals encreasing in *dis* *mis* and *ris* are masculines, as
apis lapidis, *Aneis Aneidis* or *Aneidos*, *sanguis san-*
guinis, *elvis glivis*, *vomis* for *vomer* *vomeris*. And few
parissyllabicalls.

Mascula sunt piscis, fascis, sic mensis et orbis.
et corbis sentis vectis sic vermis et axis.
et fastis postis torris velut unguis et unguis.
Qualibet in quis lis demum claudentia nire.

All Adjectives ending in *is* are of the Common
two, as *rustus*, likewise *Scrobis scrobis* or *scrobs scro-*
bs, is of the doubtfull gender.

Os making *osis* will be feminine, as *Cos cotis*, *dos dotis*, and making *osis*, masculine, as *flor floris*, but *os oris*, and *as assis*, with *epos epeos*, and such Greek words be neutrals. *Heros herois*, is by signification Masculine, and so are *custas custodis*, *sacerdos sacerdotis*, of the Common of two; *us* increasing short, is a termination neutrall, as *corpus corporis*, *vulnus vulneris*, or increasing long in Monosyllables, and Nounes of the Comparative degree, as *iur*, *iuris*, *melius melioris*, but *mus muris*, *lepus leporis*, *ligus or ligur liguris*, be Masculines by signification, *pecus pecudis*, is feminine, if *pecudis* be not a parasyllabicall. Any other Nounes increasing long are feminines, as *inens*, *subscus*, *palus paludis*, *tellus telluris*, *virtus virtutis*, so *opus opuntis* is feminine by signification, and likewise *grus gruis* of the doubtful Gender.

T is a termination feminine of Greek Nounes, as *Chelys Chelyos*, *Chlamys Chlamydis* or *Chlamydos*. But *Gortys* or *Gortyn Gortynos*, is by signification and termination feminine.

S, with another consonant next it in the end of Nounes is a feminine termination, as *crabs* or *crabes* *crabis*, *glands* *glandis*, *pars partis*, *hyems hyemis*, *stips* & *stipis*, *frons frondis* or *frontis*, *puls pultis*, and *Tyrus Tyrinthis* feminine by signification. But *fontes fontis*, *pons*, *pons*, *dens* and *Hydrops Hydropis*, *Chalybs Chalybis*, *Gryps Grypbis* are masculines. And *princeps principis*, *auceps aucupis* of the common of two by signification, *adeps adipis*, *forceps forcipis*, of the doubtfull Gender, *concor concors*, *calebs calidis*, *anceps ancepsis* of the common of three.

X, Being the termination of Nouns is feminine, *pax*, *pacis*, *nex necis*, *cavex caricis*, *nix nivis*, *filix filicis*, *nox noctis*, *lux lucis*, *obsolet frux frugis*, *styx stygis*, *coccus coccidis*.

onix onychis. But these *orex oreis*, *remex remigis*,
and *thorax thoracis*, *candex* or *codex codicis*, *podex*, *cu-*
lex, *pulex*, *marx*, *ramex*, *sumex*, *apex*, *latrix*, *frutex*, *pol-*
lex, *vertex*, *calix*, *volvax*, *tradux*, *hombyx* are mascu-
lines, and so is *Hylax Hylacis* by signification; but
senex senis for *senectus* is of the common of two: And
limax limacis, *imbrex imbricis*, *quarx*, *vanus* of the
doubtfull gender, so *audax audacis*, *triplex triplicis*,
felix felicitis, *velox velocis*, *trux truci* of the Common
of three.

Of the Dative singular.

The Dative singular of some Nounes in this De-
clension is regular, ending only in *e*, and those not
only Greek, as *poesis poesi*, but also Latine, being either
proper names as *Charibdis*, *Opis*, *Fabaris*, *Syrtris*, or Ap-
pellatives, as *buris*, *amissis*, *stregibus* &c. of the two
last endings are copulated; as *in vigilis*, *in animalibus*,
in caris, *in septembris*, *in mensibus* &c. and most Adjectives ex-
cept these that follow, which have a redundant Da-
tive in *e*, to wit, all Participles not made Nouns
participial as *innocens*, *innocenti*, or such as are de-
fective in the neuter as *senex*, *juvenis*, or that in-
crease short, as *deser*, *uber*, *vetula*, or that increase
long, being made proper names, as *Clementis*, *Fi-*
lialis.

Many Substantives have the redundant Dative
in *e*, to wit Nounes syncopated, as *cave* *venter*, and
collis *torris*, with such like doubling *e* and *i*, so
apis *nubes* *dogma* *grando* *sermo* *lacus* *sal* *plen* *far* *mas*
virtus *caput* *lex*, but *victrix* and such nounes verbal
taken adjectively, may be used indifferently.

D **of**

Of the Nominative and Genitive
plural.

ow All Adjectives or Substantives whose increasing short, and monosyllable Substantives that end in *us* increasing long, make the Nominative plural in *u*, and the Genitive plural in *um*, as *belli bellum*, *fortis fortis*, *parvi parvum*, *maius maius*, *improbum improbum*, *doctum doctum*, &c. Other monosyllables make the Nominative plural in *u*, but the Genitive in *um*, as *corda cordum*, *ossa ossum*. And all others whose not increasing, or increasing long, whether of Substantives or Adjectives, make *ia*, and *ium*, as *retia retium*, so *vellicula vellicula*, *liquida liquida*, &c. excepting nouns of the comparative degree, as *melius meliorum*. Substantives of other Genders in the Genitive plural end in *um*, either increasing short or syncopated as *sanguinum*, *fructum*, *salutem*, *volucrum*, *campestrum*, or not increasing, that have a vowel next before *um* *pum* or *tum*, as *canum opum vatum*, or increasing long with a vowel next before *um* *dum gum num crum tum*, as *radicum*, *paludum*, *legum*.

legum, leonum, rumorum, civitatum, and the rest end for the most part in *ium*, as *Urbum fascium vallum solium carium marium mensum litium*. Genitives plurall of some nouns that end in *ium*, are synecopated as *sapientium, celestium bonum*. Some admit Epenthesis as *alicuius calicium*, some end Greek-wise, as *horreum*.

Of Datives plurall.

The Dative plurall of some greek nouns end in *asi*, as *dryasi* for *dryadibus*. And likewise *boi* will make *bubus*, and *bobus* for *bovibus*.

Of Accusatives plurall.

The Accusatives plurall end sometimes in *eis*, of Substantives and Adjectives feminine, that end in the genitive plurall in *ium*, as *poeteis omneis*, being an Archaisme, and sometimes the Adjective is contracted, as *omnis* for *omneis*. And in greek nouns that Case doth end sometimes in *as* greek-wise, as *victoras* for *rhetores*.

Nounes redundant being of this and other Declensions.

Some Nouns redundant are of this and the fifth Declension, as *requies requietis* and *requies*, so *famis* and *fameis*; some are in the singular of this, in the Plurall of the second, as *vas vasis*, and *vasa vasorum*, from *vasum* now obsolet.

Of the fourth Declension,

Nounes of the fourth Declension end in *us*, being for most part Masculine Verbals, few other Nounes in *us* are feminine, and all pluralls in *ua* ienters, being derived from *Agates* singular in *u*; the Nounes variable are declined as in these examples.

Singulariter.

{	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	}
	<i>Curr-us</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ui vel u</i>	<i>um</i>	
	<i>Corn-u</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>	

Pluraliter.

{	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	}
	<i>us</i>	<i>uum</i>	<i>ibu s</i>	<i>us</i>	
	<i>ua</i>	<i>uum</i>	<i>ubus</i>	<i>ua</i>	

Annotations.

Substantives of this Declension answering nearest to the fourth of the contracts in the Greek, may be of any Gender, having the Common of two and Epicene. Some Greek proper names of this Declension have a third termination of texts in *o*, as *Clio, Clotho, Gorgo, Io, Mantho, Sappho*, all feminine by signification, and are declined as in this example.

Singu=

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Ecc-h-o	us	oi	o.

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
			us

Some few Appellatives are likewise feminines, as *porticus acus tribus manus colus domus ficus*, and the plurall *idus*, likewise *pennus specus* be of the double gender.

Of the Genitive singular.

The Genitive singular of this Declension with old Authors did end sometimes in *i*, as *fructi* for *fructus copia*, so *tumulti, ornati*. And sometimes in *is* as *delinium annus*, for *annus*. And the Genitive plurall is often syncopated, as *Currum*.

Of the Dative singular and plurall.

Some Poets have used the Dative singular only in *u*, as *parce metu*. Moreover the Dative plurall of *arcus artus lacus partus specus tribus veru* do end only in *ubus*, but *cornu genu portus* do end both in *i-bus* and *ubus*, and most other Nounes in *ibus* only.

Of Nounes redundant, being of this and other Declensions.

Nouns redundant are of this and the second Declension, as *Domus domi*, for any dwelling place, and *Domus domus* for an edifice, *ficus fici* for the Tree, and *ficus fici* for the fruit, *colus coli* for the Instru-
ment

ment, and *colus colus* for the work: others are of this and the third, as *penus penoris* and *penus*.

Of the fifth Declension

Nouns of the fifth Declension end only in *es*, being feminines, and are thus declined.

Singulariter.			
Nomi.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
<i>facies</i>	<i>ei.</i>	<i>ei vel e</i>	<i>em.</i>
Pluraliter.			
Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
<i>es</i>	<i>erum</i>	<i>ebus</i>	<i>es.</i>

Annotations.

The fifth (having no affinity with Greek Declensions, at the redundant Dative hath none with Greek cases) is a latine Declension of Nounes descending mostly from other Declensions, either the first, as from *mollitia mollities*, from *desidia desidies*, from *Barbaria Barbaries*, or the second, as from *alluvium alluvies*, or the third, as from *plebs plebes*, or the fourth, as from *acus acies*.

And Nounes of this Declension be feminines, as most usually derived from such, except *dies* of the doubtful Gender in the singular, and masculine in the plural, and *verities* only masculine: furthermore *dies* with *effigies facies res species* and *acies* are entire in the plural. But the rest have only the Nominative and Accusative plural, or entirely want that number, as betokening vertues or vices, where-

whereof in Nounes Anomalous, remaining only to be handled.

Of the Genitive and Dative Singular.

Dies with good Authoris found in the Genitive, as *pena dies* for *dies*, so is *die* apocoped, *mercurus die septimi*. And *Dii* lyncopated, *etiamque dii*, but this last may come from *dius* obsolete, whence are *diu* and most Derivatives that are in use, likewise the Dative singular in other Nounes is oft contracted, as *res commissa fide* for *fidei*.

The termination of Nounes being the Common of two.

Sas canis exul homo vates hor author & infant Dux, pugil, parens princeps cum vindicta Martyr.

Bifrons verna senex, quavis Gentilis, ut Arcas.

The termination of Nounes the Doubtfull Gender.

Grossus adeps limax varix specus anguis et imbrex.

Barbitas atque dies tradux scrobs cum gine linter.

Masculines seldome Feminines.

Bubo cinis cortex ales cum cardine margo Atq; rudens et onyx python cum calce, pede imo.

Feminines seldome Masculines.

Halcyon et forceps natrix lynx talpa cupido.

of

Of Nounes Anomalous.

Nounes Anomalous are ranged to foure sorts, that is to say, to redundants, defectives, heterogeneous and heteroclitous, & hereto may be added heteroclitous, such as haue diuers formes, proper to the Pronouns, and heteroschematicus belonging unto Compounds, all notified already in their distinct places.

Of Nounes Heteroclit.

Nounes Heteroclit swarving mostly from the regular, and very needfull to be known, as very usual, are these that follow, ego tu sui is iste ille ipse hic qui ambo and duo, the three first being totally irregular, and the eight last only in parts, are declined as in the following instances.

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Ego.	mei.	mihī vel me	me
Tu.	tui.	tibi vel te	te.

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
nos	nostrum vel nostri	nobis	nos
vos	vestrum vel vestri.	vobis.	vos.

Singulariter & Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
caret	sui	sibi vel se	se.

Sing.

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
is		eo	eum
ea	ejus	ei vel ea	eam
id		eo	id.

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
ii vel ei	eorum	iis	eos
ez	earum	vel	cas
ea	eorum	eis	ca

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
Ist		o	um
a	ius	i vel a	am
ud		o	ud

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
i	orum		os
z	arum	is	as
a	orum		a

And in like manner be declined ille and ipse,
saying that ipse maketh the neuter ipsum.

Singular-

(62)

Singulariter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
hic		hoc	hunc
hæc	huius	huic vel hæc.	hanc
hoc		hoc	hoc

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
hi	horum		hos
hæ	harum	his	has
hæc	horum		hæc

Singulariter.

Qui	quo	quem
Quæ	cuius cui v	qua quam
Quod	quo.	quod

Pluraliter.

Qui	quorum	quibus	Quos
Quæ	quarum	quæis	quas
Quæ	quorum	vel quis	quæ.

Pluraliter.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.
o	orum	obus	os
Da--æ	orum	abus	as
o	orum	obus	o

And in like manner Amb---

}
o
æ
o
&c.

Num

Num and en compounded, of ne h and alius appo-
 posed to, or compounded with quis, will change
 quæ both singular and neuter plural to quæ: num,
 en, h; and ne are lessee compounded with any
 other Case besides the Nominative and the Ac-
 cusative; but alius is compounded with quis in all
 Cases; and quæ by quod may be applied there-
 unto.

Se may be doubled in the Accusative, and quis
 in that and other cases, as in the Nominative
 quisquis quicquid; in the Dative Ablative
 quoquo quaquæ quoquo, and in the Accusative
 quicquid.

Iste and hic are compounded together in the
 Nominative, iste iste iste and iste, in the Da-
 tive Ablative iste iste iste, in the Accusative
 istum istum iste of iste. And ecce with tum
 and eam eos and eas, eccum eccam eccos eccas.
 And en with illum illam æ illum ellam. Lastly,
 quis in the Nominative, and qui in the Dative
 Ablative being sepe, are of the Common of
 two.

Of Nounes heterogeneous.

Some Nouns with the number change their Gen-
 der, as in the following instances.

Masculines in the Singular, Neuters in the Plu-
 rall; as *avertus averta*, *Pangus Pangæ*, where
 the Neutrall Adjectives may bee put Substantively,
 or refer to known Appellatives, the first to *flumina*,
 the last to *arva*, or *inga*.

Masculines in the Singular, Masculines and Neu-
 ters in the Plurall; as *iocus, locus, ioci*, or *ioca, loci*,
 or *loca*, both being with old Authors Neuter in the
 Singular, but now grown obsolet,

Feminines

Feminines in the Singular, and Neuters in the Plurall; as *carbasa carbasa*, the Neuter Singular being now obsolete, and the Masculine Plurall: Neuters in the Singular, Masculines in the Plurall, as *cælum cæli*, and *cæli cælorum*, neither Singular of this, nor Plurall of that being in use.

Neuters in the Singular Masculine, and Neuter in the Plurall: as *frænum fræni*, and *fræna, ræstrum, ræstri* and *ræstræ*, the Masculines Singular being obsolete.

Neuters in the Singular, Feminines in the Plurall: as *delicium delicia*.

Neuter in the singular, common of three in the Plurall; as *plus, plavis, plures* and *plura*. In all which Examples it would bee an easier way to account such Nounes defective in the number, which they want, whereby all the Heterogeneous vanish, as needlesse incumbantes to young Students. And upon the same account may be iustly banished the combination of Nounes defective: as of *Jupiter* with *Jovis*, *supellex* with *supellectilis*, and such others, which ought not to passe so, else by the same Law all Compounds of such defective Simples should retaine like Obliques: but *Mars Jupiter* will not make *Mars Jovis* neither doth *Dijovis* come from *diespiter*, but *dis/piteris*.

Of Nounes defective in Declension.

All Aptotes spoken of in the Genders are defective.

Of Nounes defective in the singular Number.

All the Cardinall Nounes of number, (*unus* excepted) are defective in the Singular: as *duo tres quatuor, ducenti, millia*; Distributives, as *singuli gemini, bini, trini, or terni*: but such are used of Poets in the singular, *terno consurgunt ordine remi*, yet in a different sense.

Nounes implying a Dignity do commonly want the Singular, whether proper Names of Townes, *Gaby, Thebe, Pergama*: of Feasts, *Floralia*: of Games *Apollinares, Pythia*: of Bookes, *Biblia*; or Appellatives, *superi, lares, Penates, Celites, proceres, primores, magnates, sori, fasces, natales, maiores & des nuntia munita*: or betokening terrour, as *manes, parca, lemures, inferi*: or plenty, *divitiæ opes blanditiæ, sales*, and *facetia*; in the same sense, or at least variety *idus, calende, sones, dixæ, lactes, bellæia*.

Of Nounes defective in the Plurall.

All proper Names (unless they are Plurall only, as in the former rule) or taken Appellatively, or for the persons, but for their conditions instanced in the variation of Substantives, are onely singular: as *Jda, Tagus, Lelaps*. Some of these admit of both numbers, but in a double sense: as *Pergamus*, a Towne in *Asia*, and *Pergama*, the Trojan turrets, or in a double notion, as *Argos* an aptote, and *Argi* variable.

Appellatives also want the Plurall, being abstracts, as *gloria lux*, and in particular such as betoken Vertues or Vices, whether morall, as *sama pudor indoles culpa labes*: or naturall, as *salus contagio podagra fames siccitas vita mors lethum*: specially such as

end like *desidia*, *sapientia* *ignavia* *materia* *pietas* *fortitudo*. Or Names of peculiar Ages, as *pubes* *senium*: Or Names of any Office of Persons, or property of place or time, *tribunatus* *tablinum* *institutum*: or Names of Plants or Fruits, *bacchar* *triticum* *siligo*: or of Liquids and things measurable, *pix* *lac* *oleum* *butyrum* *saccarum*: or of Metals, *aureum* *argentum* *ferum*, as for *ara* the aptote Plurall and such others, betoken things material, not the bare matter. Or Nounes collective or Distributive, having in the singular a force of Plurals, as *vulgus*, *plebs*, *proles* *alter nemo*.

Lastly Names of things individuall, as *mundus* *phoenix*, *sol* *ignis*, for *soles*, and *ignes* signifie daies, or heates; so *vesper* *oriens* *ver*, *hyems* *meridies* *unus*: wee read *unus vivunt legibus* for *eadem*, but oftner *proceres* *uni*, for *soli*.

Of Defectives in Cases.

Monoptotes being onely rectis, *Jupiter*, *supellex*, for *supellestilis* is a regular Adiective, *expes*, *maeste* singular, and *maesti* plurall, being onely Genitives, as *nauci* *dicis* *cuiusmodi*, which may bee an Aptote Adiective, *impræsentiarum* which may be an Adverb, being only Datives Acquisitive, *ostentui*, *dispicatui*, *adorisui* *inductui*, or Ablativals *ambage* *impete* *injussu*, *natu*, & *diu noctu astu* *imprimis* *ingratis*, which may bee Adverbs, being onely Accusatives, *eccos* *illas* *insicias*, *inferias*.

Diptotes being Nominatives and Accusatives, *dica* *dicam*, and all Aptotes, excepting such as end in *a*, likewise *suppetia* *suppetias* with parasyllabical Plurals of the third Declension; as *grates*, and many Plurals of the fifth, and *hyemes* for colds or storms: and *rara* *fora* *ora* *maria*, taken indefinitely

nically, not particularly. Being Rects and Ablatives, *fors forte*; being Gentives and Ablativalls, *spontis sponte, verberis verberare, iugeris iugere, repetundarum repetundis*: Being Accusatives and Ablatives, as *dictum dictu*, and all Supinalls.

Triptotes wanting Rects, *Jovis, sui* (the Primitive) and *dapis, frugis, ditionis, pretis, vicis, opis, soridis, primoris*: or wanting the Genitive, as *nemo quisquis istic facies vices*; or wanting the Dative, as *plus tantundem*.

Of Defectives in Gender and Person.

Pauper dives juvenis, and such other want Neuters, *cetera ceterum* doth want a Masculine, *satius* is neuter only, *Ego nos in vos* have each but one Person.

Of Nounes redundant in Gender.

All Nounes Epicæne by synthesis, or, of the doubtfull, or, of the common of two, or of the common of three; as *elephantus bubo pateris felix*, bee redundant in Gender, because they do by signification belong to many, though by construction they referre certainly unto one Gender, whereof already.

Of Redundant both in Gender and Declensions.

Some Adjectives do abound, as in Declension, so in Gender, being of two or three divers endings; as *inermis, or inermus*: so *biugis, enervis, magnanimis, effrenis*; and with some Authors, *insomnis proclivis, illimis, enormis, imberbis, infamis, hilaris*, end also in *us*. And with some Authors *procerus*, and *benignus*, end also in *is*.

And moveable Substantives will abound as in Gender so in Declension, sponsa sponsus, admonitum, admonitio admonitus, cassida cassis, baptismus baptisma, alluvium, alluvio alluvies, abacus abax, gryphus gryps, pavius pavus, hebdomada hebdomas, mulstra mulstrale, involutum involutum, occipitum occiput, presepium presepe, conurum conurus, delphinus delphis, or delphin, with many more.

Other Substantives abound in Gender but not in their Declension; as baculus baculum, tapes tape-re, and such other. And other Nounes are redundant, either in case alone, or in Declensions only notified in their proper places.

Lastly, besides these Anomalies of Nounes in the discriminations by cases, and in the indirect motions by Genders, there is another transverse motion of Adjectives made by comparisons which is anomalous and irregular, spoken of already in the various Figures of Nounes.

Of Verbes and their formes or kindes.

Verbes like Nounes are of two kinds, being either Substantive betokening to be, or Objective signifying to do, or suffer.

The kindes of Verbes Substantive.

Verbes Substantive may be distinguished as they signifie either. 1. Truth of being, as sumo existo evado maneo nascor orior efficior tuor constituor vivo, or 2. the hope of being, as cogor poscor exoror designor; or 3. the opinion of being, as audio, for vocor credor dicor habeor existimor videor: or 4. the experience of being, as arguor cognoscor inscribor.

The kinds of Verbes Adjective.

Verbs Adjective have four kinds, being either *Present, Active, Passive, or Deponent*; the two first ending in *o*, and the two last in *or*.

Of Verbes Neuter.

The Verb *Neuter* becoming either to *do*, or suffer, is *intransitive* or *absolute*, having a signification in its self compleat, either *Actively* in Verbs of *gesture*, as *discumbo surgo sic venio discodo mingo, nubo* with their *Mediatives*, *micurionupturio*; or *Passively* in Verbs *inceptives* and their *Primitives*, as *caleseo* and *calco*, and in many others, as *agroto vapulo venco liceo sic* with its *Compounds*.

Of Verbes Active.

The Verb *Active* having of it self an imperfect signification, it *always* *transitive* to a *sufferer*, either *person* or *thing*; as *pater amat filium & ejus indolem*, and some are *transitive* only to the thing of the same signification with themselves; as *gaudium gaudet, alienum arat fundum, bibit vinum, canit hymnum*.

Of Verbes Passive.

The Verb *Passive* hath also an imperfect sense without recourse unto the *Doer*: for *correlatives* reflect upon, and will all interpret each another: as *amatur a patre filius, eadem consilium canitur*.

Of Verbes Deponent.

The Verb *Deponent* laying aside the *transverse* motion

motion from or, to o, Verbin the passive termination retain the three former significations, in that respect called also a Verb common: as *garrus osculor*, used absolutely for a Verb of gesture, *osculor te*, used transitively, referring to a sufferer, *osculor a te*, used passively reflecting upon the doer.

Few Verbs will equally share in all three senses, but any Deponent will admit, as in the Participle of the second future, a passive sense and structure, so in all other Moods and Tenses an active signification and construction: as *pauca tibi sunt loquenda*, or *pauca loquere*.

The variation of the formes or kinds of Verbes.

A Verbe Substantive and an Adjective construed together, will both bee changed into an Adjective-all Verbe; and contrariwise, as *arte oratio excolitur & splendet*, or *excolta est & splendida*.

A Verbe Neuter of gesture may be made a Passive in the third person singular onely, and contrariwise, as *audita virorum clade flebant semina*, or *flebatur a feminis*; but such Ablatives of the Doers are seldome expressed, and the precedent Ablative of the thing or cause, called the absolute, will bee resolved to a Nominative: as *virorum clades quum a feminis audiretur, flebatur*.

The Verbe Active may bee turned to a Passive, by making the Accusative of the sufferer a Nominative, and the Nominative of the Doer an Ablative of the person or of the thing, with *ab* the prepositionall Adverbe serving thereunto, or to a Dative of the person put acqvisitively, specially with Po-

ers, as *virtutem nos colimus*, *tu famam petas*, or *Ab nobis colitur virtus*, *tibi fama petatur*, *Sol tu canas hymnum*, *nos fundum arabimus*, or *hymnus a te canatur* *Ab nobis arabitur fundus*.

Verbes Deponent are invariable to any other kinde, both as defective in Figure, and as participating in the sense or forme of the other three.

Of the Figure of Verbes.

By the figure Verbes are either primitive, being originals, as *do curro caveo*; and such like *Verbe* or *Neuter*; Verbs in *o*. or else they are Derivative, as descending from a primitive: whether simply from one, as *currito*, or compoundedly from two or more, as *reddo*.

Of Verbes simple.

Verbs simple are of three sorts, denominative, verbal or adverbial.

Of Verbes denominative, and their variations.

Verbes denominative are either Apparatives; as *aquor frumentor lignor, pabulo*; resolved by *suppedito aquam, &c.* Or Imitatives, as *adolescunturio cucurrio, ligurio, prurio, scaturio, syllaturio, patrisso, egresco, calvesco, canesco, puerasco, vilesco, silvescit, desperasco, grescor, irascor, rurscor, vulpinor*; resolved by *adolescunturium refero, &c.*

Of the Verbal derivatives.

Verbal derivatives are of five sorts. 1. Frequentatives, 2. Diminutives, 3. Desideratives, 3. Inchoatives; and 5. all Verbes in *o*, derived either from known Verbes in *o*, being Active, as *doceor*, from *doseo*, or Neuter, as *curritur*, from *curro*; or from supposed Verbes in *o*. and such are

all Deponents, as *fatior*, from supposed *fatco*.

Of Frequentatives and their variations.

Frequentatives or iteratives be all of the first Coniugation, and for the most part derived of the Supine by changing *um* to *o*. as *tracto* *tracto* *tracto*, *commentor* *commentor* *commentor*, *sector* *sector* *sector*, *lynco* *lynco* *lynco*, *grasso* *grasso* *grasso*, *amplexor* *amplexor* *amplexor*. And in the first Coniugation by changing *atum* unto *ito*, if the Supine be a Polysyllable, as of *clamat* *clamat* *clamat*, else if it be a disyllable, it keepeth *a*. as *nato*. Some frequentatives joine both the precedent formes together, as of *dictum* *dicto*, and from *dictatum* *dictito*, so from *pulso* *pulsio*, and *pulsio* *pulsio* *pulsio*, *pulsio* *pulsio* *pulsio*. And some verbs of the third Coniugation in the second person singular cast away *s*. taking *to* in the place of it, as *agito* *stulto* *fuzito*, *querito*, the last syllable save one being short in all simple frequentatives, being polysyllables, and all be derived from Verbs Active or Deponent, being of the first or third Coniugation, and may be resolved by the Adverb *sæpe* or the verb *soleo*, as *sæpe* *quaro*, or *querere* *soleo*, &c.

Of Diminutives and their variations.

Diminutives being of the first Coniugation, have the Terminations following *albico* *can. illo* *for. billo* *pullulo* *pirisso* *dormito*, they are derived from Verbs of all four Coniugations, and may be resolved by *aliquantulum* put unto the Primitive, or by *sub* and such other compounded with it, as *aliquantulum* *albeo* or *subalbico*.

Of Desideratives and their variations.

Desideratives or mediatives take both formation and signification, from the first future ending in *rus* as *cenaturio* *transurio* *esurio* *iturio*; and they are

are derived usually from Verbs Neuter of any Coniugation, and will continue Neuters, and may be resolved, *canare cupio*. And suitable thereto in sense are, *viso accerso arcesso incesso laceſſo ſaſceſſo capeſſo*, &c. for *videre accire appeto*.

Of Inchoatives and their variations.

Inchoatives or Augmentatives are of the third Coniugation, and derived from Verbs neuter of allſoure Coniugations, by adding *eo* to the ſecond perſon ſingular, as *labasco biſco* for *biaſco clareſco putesco* from obſolet *puteo miſereſco tremiſco remiſcor fruſcor* and *frumiſcor* obſolet *miſcor* reſolved by *incipio labare*, or *pergo clarere*.

Of Adverbiall Derivatives.

Verbs derived from Adverbs be all of the ſiſt Coniugation, as *intro ſatio ſuperb*, and are reducible only to their Primitives, or otherwiſe variable by ſome ſynonymes.

Of Verbs compounded.

Verbs of more then one originall are compounded of Verbs with Nonnes, as *belligero multiplico*, of Verbs with Verbs, as *caleſacio caleſco*, and *allio* may come of *allum iro*, of Verbs with Adverbs, either abſolute, as *benefacio ſatiſfacio*, or prepoſitionalls either inſeparable, as *conſerio diſduo diſcedo removeo ſcremo*, or ſeperable either one, as *deſetiſcor*, or two as *indefeſſus*, or of obſolet Verbs with ſuch whether Latine, as *remiſdeo conniveo adipiſcor aſpicio deleo elicio expediſco extinguo offendo*, or Greek as *excello expleo induo experior*.

¶ Of alterations in words by composition.

A syllable is sometimes inserted in the compound, as in *concipilo reciproco recupero*, Sometimes a letter only as in *comburo redimo*, both for Euphonic. Sometimes the simples are impaired, either both as *aucupor cogo malo*, or the Verb is only entire, as, *possum credo trano ampulo aufero offero*, or only maimed, as *prebeo dego pergo*. And in some Compounds both are intire, as *manumitto satisfdo*. Some Verbs in composition change *a.* to *u.* as *consulo insulto exculpo inculco*. Some change *o.* to *u.* as *occulo*, some cast away *a.* as *excludo percutio diluo*, some change *a.* to *e.* as *gradior* making *egredior*, so *pator fatiscor damno lacto sacro facto arceo tracto partio scando patro candeo carpo spargo pario*, so *compesco discesca* those two from *pasco*, some Verbs change the first vowel into *i.* through all Moods and Tenses as *cado* making *precido precia*, so *ludo ego guero tener, ado cano salio* except in *consulo*, so *pator rapio sapio statino tango taceo* and *placido*, except in *complaceo* and *perplaceo*, so *habeo* except in *posthabeo*, so *maneo* compounded with *e.* in *pre* and *pro*, so *pango* saving in composition with *circum de ob* and *re*. Other Verbs change the first vowel into *i.* in all Tenses, except the preter tense, and such other as be deriued thence, as *fateor* making *confiteor*, but *confessus*, so *capio frango incio premo* and *emo*, except *coemo*, so *rego* except *pergo surgo*, so *ago*, except *perago satago dego cogo*, so *facia* compounded with prepositionall Adverbs, so *lego* compounded with *e. de con inter di* and *nec*, which three last make *intellexi dilexi neglexi*, but all other like the simple, Lastly by composition, some change the figure on-ly, as, *verto reverter*, some only the Coniugation,

as *do das*, making *addo addis*, some both, as *sperno* making *asperno*, some change the coniugation and forme, as *candeo* making *ascendo*, some the forme and figure, as *sacro* making *execro*, some all three together, as *frango* making *suffragor*.

Of the proper affections of Verbs.

The proper affections of Verbs are four, Moods, Tenses, Persons and Coniugations.

Of Moods.

Moods are distinct wayes of using verbs in the same sense and structure being seven. The Indicative, Imperative, Subiunctive, Participiple, Infinitive, Gerund and Supine.

Of the Indicative.

Verbs of the Indicative, whence all other Moods are formed, either aske a Question, or giue a reason of doing or suffering, as *Quo vadis?* *Oxoniam peto*.

Of the Imperative.

Verbs Imperative either 1 Command by authority, or 2 Advise as a duty, or 3 Grant to importunity, or 4 Crave as curtesie. 1. *Pro Sicilia excedunto*. 2. *Fraus omnis abesto*. 3. *Res tuas tibi habe*. 4. *Dilectis aspirate*.

Of the Subiunctive.

A verb Subiunctive doeth commonly interpret another principall verb, being allwayes the Indicative or Imperative, and therefore bath a precedent Coniunctive adverb can fall or conditional

ditionall put thereto, or implied therewith, being familiarly resolved to the Infinitive, as, *Jubeo valeas*, or *ut valeas*, or *te valere*, to cave facias, or *ne facias*, or *cave facere*.

Otherwise the Subjunctive by Enallage standeth for the Imperative, called either permissive and potentia, or resolvable to the Infinitive with *possum volo debeo*, or with the Imperpersonalis, *licet libet oportet*, as *vitiis aequo omnibus abhorreas*, or *te vitiis aequo omnibus abhorreere oportet*. Or else an Optative being then joined with an Adverb of wishing and resolvable to the Infinitive with *quaslo, precor, opto*, as *utinam dictis Albane maneres*, or *te dictis manere opto*.

Of the Participle.

The Participle an amphibious kind partaketh with Nouns in Declension, by Case and Gender, and with Verbs in Conjugation, by tense, signification, and construction; and with both in number and person. Wherefore the two futures, retaining constantly both tense and structure, are constant Modes of verbs, as *Mulier Graios visura Penates*; or *Cui Graiorum Penates visendi*. The present and preterperfect tense then only are Modes, when they keep expresse mention of time, and the same structure, as *vinum amans*, or *qui amat, segniorem exosus*, or *qui odit polenta pransus*, or *qui pransit*. Else words of either tenses become Nounes, desisting to be Modes of verbs by deposing the tense & structure, as *Vini amans*, or *amator*, which alwayes happeneth when such words admit a different Figure from the verbs whence they are derived, either

either by composition, as, impatiens operis, indoctus lyra, or a Comparative intension, as, quanto reverentior ille decorum, tanto fit reliquis ornatio, unus habetur præ reliquis longe cultissimus.

Of the Infinitive.

Verbs of the Infinitive Mood are constructed regularly with adiectivall nouns or verbs, as miles audax est, or audet occidere et occidi. But irregularly and figuratively by Enallage, they sometimes stand for a Nominative Participle, as, humanum est irasci, sometimes for a Genitive of the Gerund, as, metere tempus erat, for metendi, sometime for the Indicative, as, Tum pius Aeneas humeris abscindere vestem for abscindebat, or Elliptically another verb may be understood therewith, as abscendere cepit.

Of Gerunds.

Gerunds being the second future put Substantively are used in the singular number only, to expresse the administration of affairs. And being Genitives are accordingly construed with a former Substantive, either expressed, as, vivendi ratio, or understood with adiectivall nouns or verbs, as, Id fecit assentandi, potius quam quod gratum haberet, supply causa, which construction is sometimes found of Gerundivalls, as, Instituitur imperium reipublicæ augendæ, supply gratia. And the Genitives of Gerund, are sometimes used for the Gerundivalls by Enallage, as licentia diripiendi pomorum, for diripiendorum pomorum, sometimes also by Enallage the Infinitive word come in place thereof, as, Non datur ad Musas currere lata via for currendi.

In the Dative Acquisitive Gerunds are constructed either with verbs, as, operam navar exorando nec flendo modum facit, or flendi, where the latter of two Substantives is changed to a Dative; or with Preteritives, as, tundendo inhabile ferrum, scribendo papyrus inutilis, and the Preteritives are sometimes understood, as, Non sunt as alienum solvendo, supply pares, idonei, and such like.

In the Dative Ablative Gerunds are constructed with prepositional Verbs, expressed or understood, as, in judicando criminosi celeritas, cantando rumpitur anguis.

In the Accusative Gerunds are constructed with Prepositions constantly expressed, as, locus ad agendum amplissimus.

The Nominative is commonly a gerundival, keeping the construction of the passive voice, as, vobis bibendum aut abeundum, where the Acquisitive is commonly understood. But by a Greek we seldom use in the Latin, it will admit Cases of the Verb, as, armorum si nobis carendum, pugnent alii, amicos tibi demerendum, resolved by oportet, aut opus est amicos te demereri, or ut demerearis.

Of Supines.

The Supine so called, as regardless of affections, belonging thereto, is constructed with Verbs of motion, notifying the term or end thereof, as, tui miserrum venio, Graiiis servitum matribus ibant, scitarum oracula missi, coctum, non vulatum conducti sunt, ire with the first, and iri with the last being understood, nola uxorem filio datum, aut has litteras tibi renunciatum iri, de injuriis

injuris questum itur, Legantur sociis rogatum, res-
solved, rogatur, rogare, or ut rogarent socios.

The Dative Ablative of the Supine may
be construed with verbs of motion like other
Substantives, but is no Head of a verb, for
it admitteth no casuall word thereof, as, redire
venatione, or venatu ferarum, not feras. And
moreover will be construed with Adjectives,
which construction the Supine will not admit
as facile mirum arduum fas opus, turpe factum, or
feri, not factum or facere or factum ire.

Lastly but few Deponents will forme this
Ablative all as, dignum imitari.

Differences of the seven Moods.

The Indicative and Subjunctive are definite in
time, person, and number, and likewise the Im-
perative in all three, but notwithstanding it is
defective in time present or past, nor lyable to
command or counsell, and also in the first person,
for all men do allow themselves full liberty.
The Participle is indefinite only in person.

The Infinitive in Person and Number. Gerunds
and Supines, are indefinite in all three making
no expresse mention of time, person or number,
though Gerunds do participate with second fu-
tures, and both Gerunds and Supines are sin-
gular. Lastly, either of both admit a signification
promiscuously Active or Passive, being resolvable
to either voice, but the Supine more commonly
to the Active, and Gerunds to the Passive, whence
they are deriyed.

Of the variation of Moods;

The future of the Indicative is used for a most binding Imperative, as *non occides* for *ne occidito*, but specially the Participle of the second future, as, *vincendum tibi aut moriendum*, for *aut omnino vince aut posus morere*, or in Hebraisme *morienda morieris*.

Participles of the present, or the Gerunds notifying the efficient cause, are resolved to the Indicative with *dum*, *cum* *quia* *si* *postquam*, as *deseriscor ambulans*, *ambulando*, *inter ambulandum*, or *dum ambulo*, but the Participles of the present or pretertense put in the Dative ablativall, called the absolute, are resolved to the Subjunctive, as *Imperante Augusto*, or *tum imperaret*, *hoste superato*, or *si superetur*. And so are Gerunds notifying a finall cause, *conductus ad accusandum*, *vel ob absolvendum*, or *ut accitises aut absolvas*. And all Gerunds are familiarly changed to Gerundivalls, differing only each from other, in that Gerunds notify rather the office then the time, & Gerundivalls notify the time rather then the office, as, *nos Gramaticam docendi*, *vos illius ediscenda cura tenet*.

The Infinitive will be changed to the Subjunctive with *ut* after verbs of command advise intreaty or suffrance, *prosit*, &c. as *iubeo moneo rogo siha decet licet oportet refert expedit*, &c. as *volo te abire*, or *ut abeas*: And to the Indicative with *quod* after verbs of common or particular sense, or of passions arising thence, as, *intelligo dubito reor audia video spero metuogaudeo mereo iruat dolet aridet allubescit displice*, &c. as *constat te valere*, or *quod vales*, which variation is necessary to be known for finding the structure of the Accusative between two verbs, whether it followeth the

verb

Verb Personall or cometh before the Infinitive.
Other variations are instanced formerly in the se-
verall Moods.

Of Tenses.

**Tenses directing when things do or suffer
are five.**

The 1. present notifying the time now
with the signes *doe* or *am*.

2. The Preterimperfect tense, the time scarce
past with signes *did* or *was*.

3. The Preterperfect tense the time lately
past with signes *have* or *have been*.

4. The Preterpluperfect tense the time
long since past with signes *had* or *had been*.

5. The future a time to come with signes
shall and *will*, or *shall and will be*, or with the
signe hereafter, and it is called the **promising**
tense.

Of forming Tenses.

What Cases are in Nounes, the same are Ten-
ses in Verbs all descending from the second per-
son singular of the present in the Indicative, as
the obliques from the Genitive singular, partly
by changing in the Preterperfect tenses, and Su-
pines of some Verbs in the three last Coniugati-
ons, the Characteristicall letter, which is the
next before *as* *es* and *is*, and partly by adding to
the Characteristicall in other Tenses, as in the ex-
amples following.

The Preterimperfect tense of the Indicative
and Subiunctive changeth *as* *es* and *is*, in the three
first Coniugations of Verbs in *o*, *et* *is* *eris* of Verbs

in *ar* to *ebam ebam eram eram*, and *abam ebar, arer erer*, and *is* or *iris* of the fourth Coniugation to *iebam iebar*, and *irem irer*, as of *amas amabam amabar, amarem amarer*, of *doces docebam docebar, docerem docerer*, of *legis legebam legebar, legerem legerem*, of *audis audiebam audiebar audirem audire*.

The future of the Indicative changeth as *and ex* to *abo* and *ebo*, and *ariseris*, to *abor* and *ebor*, but *is* of the third to *am ar*, and of the fourth to *iam ir*, as of *amas amabo amabor*, of *doces docebo docebor*, of *legis legam legar*, of *audis audiam audiar*. And in the Imperative the future changeth as to *a*, or *ato*, and *aris* to *are* or *ator* *es* to *e*, or *eto*, and *eris* to *ere* or *itor*; and *is* of the third to *e* or *ito*, and *eris* to *ere* or *itor*; and *is* of the fourth to *i* or *ito*, and *iris* to *ire* or *itor*, as of *amas ama amato*, and *amare amator*, of *doces doce doceto* and *docere, doce- tor*, of *legis lege legito*, and *legere legitor*, of *audis audi audito*, and *audire auditor*.

The present of the Subiunctive changeth as of Verbs in *o*, and *aris*, of Verbs in *ar* to *em* and *er*, as of *amas amem amer*, *es*, to *eam* and *ear* as of *doces doceam docerem*, *is* of the third to *em* and *ar*, as of *legis legem legar*, but *is* of the fourth to *iam* and *iar* as of *audis audiam audiar*. And in the Infinitive changeth as to *are*, and *aris* to *ari*, as *amare amari*, and *es* to *ere* and *eris* to *eri*, as *docere doceri*, and *is* of the third to *ere* and *eris* to *i* as *legere legi* and *is* of the fourth to *ire*, and *iris* to *iri*, as *audire audiri*. And in the Participle changeth as to *ans*, *es* to *ens*, and *is* of the third to *ens* but *is* of the fourth to *iens*, as of *amas amans*, of *doces docens*, of *legis legens*, of *audis audiens*. And from the Participle of the present is formed the Participle of the second future by changing *s* to *us*, as of *amans amandus*, of *docens*

docens docendus, of *legens legendus*, of *audiens audiendus*.

The Preterperfect tense in the Indicative of Verbs in *a* for the most part changeth *er* to *ovi*, and that to *atum*, as of *amas amavi amatum*, *es* to *ivi* and that to *itum*, as of *mones monui monitum*, *is* of the fourth to *ivi* and that to *itum*, as of *audis audivi auditum*, but *is* of the third to *i*; and that to *tum* or *sum* or *xum*, as of *emis emi emptum*, of *visi visi visum*, of *fixi fixi fixum*.

Where may be noted that the Supine in the first Conjugation doth end only in *tum*, in the second and fourth may end in *tum* or *sum*, and in the third may end in *tum* or *sum* or *xum*. And from the Supine are formed the Participles of the Preter tense, and of the first Future, that by changing *er* to *s*, as from *emptus* is made *emptus*, this by changing *er* to *rus*, as from *emptus* *empturus*. And all Participles may be knowne by their Terminations both in Latine and in English, the present in Latine ending alwayes in *ans* or *ens*, as *amans monens*, and in English ending in *ing*, as loving, warning, the second future in Latine ending alwaies in *urus*, and Englished like the Infinitive of the Passive voice, *amendus* like *amari* to be loved, the preter tense in Latine ending in *rus* *sus* or *xus*, and in English in *t* or *x* or *d*, *emptus*, *visus*, *fixus*, bought, seen, fixed; the first future in Latine ending in *urus*, and Englished like the Infinitive of the Active voice, as *empturus* like *emere* to buy: furthermore the present is declined like Adjectives of one Termination, and the other three like Adjectives of three divers endings, as *amans amantis*, but *amendus amanda amandum*, so *amatus* and *amaturus*.

Lastly from the Preterperfect tense of the Indicative is formed the Preterpluperfect of the same Mood, and the Preterperfect and Future, of the Subjunctive by changing *i* to *eram erim ero*, and the Preterpluperfect of the Subjunctive and Infinitive by adding thereto *sem* and *isse*, as of *legi* cometh *legeram legerim legero* and *legissem legisse*.

Of Tenses proper to every Mood.

Verbs that end in *o*, have in the Indicative and Subjunctive all five tenses, and verbs in *or* have in the Indicative the present, the imperfect and the future, but in the Subjunctive the present and imperfect only.

The Imperative of Verbs in *o* and *or* hath the future only.

Verbs Active have two Participles, the present and first future, and Passives have the other too, the Preter tense and second future. Deponents, and many Neuters have all foure Participles, but the Preter tense of neither will admit of a Passive signification or construction, which are in both accustomed to the second Future, as, *stadium equis currendum, haud viris ingrediendum*: Participles of the present first future and Preter tense in both voices will retain the construction usual to other Moods, but the Preter tense of Neuters in *o*, are ordinarily made Nounes participiall, and of the Neuters passives do keep alwayes the Passive sense and structure, as, *Pugnatum est ab Hostibus*: Gerunds and Supines have no expresse mention of Tenses, and in other moods the Tenses lacking are supplied by circumlocution.

Verba in *or* by the Participle of the Preter-
tense, with *sum* or *sui*, supply the Preter tense, and
with *eram* or *fueram*, the Preterpluperfect tense;
and in the Subiunctive, with *sim* or *fuerim* supply
the Preter tense, with *essem* or *fuissem*, the Preter-
pluperfect with *ero* and *fiero* the Future. And in
the Infinitive with *esse* or *fuisse* supply the Preter-
tense with the Supine, and *iri*, or second future,
and *esse* supply the Future tense,

Verbs in *o*, and Deponents in *or*, in the Infini-
tive Mood, by the Supine, with *ire* and first Future
with *esse*, or rather with *fore* supply the Future,
and when the first Future of the Participle is de-
fective, *fore* will stand the same, as, *Quos terras*,
hos oportet fore ut timeas, for *te limiturum*. The in-
stances of these former rules will follow in the
Examples of the severall Coniugations.

The proper affections of some Tenses.

Verbs in *o*, of the first and fourth Coniugation
in the second person singular, and the second and
third plurall of the Preter tense, in the Indica-
tive, and in all persons of both numbers in all o-
ther tenses derived thence may be Syncopated, as,
amasti amastis amavunt amaram amarim amaro a-
massem amasse, so *audisti audistis audierunt audieram*,
&c. *interis*, and *peris* are Syncopated in all persons
saving the first plurall and in imitation thereof,
some Verbs of the third Coniugation, as, *petii*,
&c. And other Verbs are Syncopated mostly of
Poets in the second person singular, as *extinxi*
dixi for *dixisti*. *Edim duim ausim axim faxim* for
ederim dederim auferim egerim fecerim, likewise
surripuam for *surripueram*, *submossim* for *submavis-*
sem, *produx* for *produxisse*, *divis* for *divisisse*. And

the future of the Subjunctive is changed with old Authors, *amavero* to *amasso*, *prohibeero* to *prohibeſſo*, *petivero* to *peteſſo*, with ſuch like in the three firſt Conjugations. and in the Infinitive for *levare* *levaſſe* *levaſſere*, &c.

Verbs in *or* whether Paſſive or Deponent in the Infinitive of the preſent tenſe will Paragogically take *ertherero*, as, *monſtraviet orat, capit diſtabiet orbis*.

Participles of the ſecond future in the third and fourth Conjugation admit Antitheſis, as *ſaciundus experiundus* for *ſaciendus experiendus*. Others of the firſt future are oft irregular, as, *ſonaturus* for *ſoniturus*, *naſciturus* for *nativus*, *pariturus* for *parturus*. And others of the preter tenſe like the Supine are Syncopated, as, *pinſitus* and *piſtus*, *potatus* and *potus*.

The variation of Tenſes.

The Preterpluperfect tenſe of the Indicative is uſed often for the future, as, *perieras niſi fuſiſſes*, for *periturus eras*. And the preter tenſe for the future of the Subjunctive, called with ſome an exact tenſe, as, *molam ſi te redemerim* for *redemero*. Laſtly the Preſent and Imperfect tenſe thereof paſſe for a future called the ſimple, *nil reſert ſi poſt eſſadem ſapias* or *ſaperas*, for *ſapias*.

Of the Number and Perſons of **V E R B S.**

The Numbers equally belonging to Nounes and Verbs being two, the ſingular and plurall, are ſpoken of already as alſo the three Perſons, which being more genuine to Verbs, as Gender to Nouns, muſt

must like the Genders be understood Physically, and strictly where the nature of things afford it, that is when ratiōnall creatures are spoken of, and otherwise may be taken at large Grammatically, being three in both Numbers, whereof before.

In the language taught of God, the third Person being the radicall hath precedence, and the first as doth become Civility, speaking of it selfe, is last in place.

The future used in that tongue for the Imperative beginneth with the first Person, implying that who make Laws, should first take them; but as Jews and Gentiles are used ordinarily in opposition, so is their forme of speaking, all Nations constantly beginning with the first Person in both Numbers of all Moods and Tenses, leaving the next place flatterers like to the second person spoken to, quite neglecting the third Person spoken of, as abiect.

Of the CONJUGATIONS.

As Tenses answer unto Cases, so do Conjugations of Verbs to Declensions of Nouns, being foure distinct wayes, whereby all singular Verbs end uniformly in the same Voile, Mood, Tense, Number and Person.

The Conjugation of every Verb is known by the termination of the second Person singular in the present tense of the Indicative mood, where all Verbs ending in *is*, or having a *i* singular aris long, are of the first Conjugation. And such as end in *es*, or have *e*. in *es* long, are of the second. And such as end in *it* short, or have

o. In eris short be of the third: And such as end in is long, or have the first i. In iris long be of the fourth.

Annotations.

It may be noted that all Verbs of the second Coniugation do end in eo and eor, but *beo calceo enucleo meo laqueo creos screeo nausos* bee of the first Coniugation; and *eo queo veneo*, be of the fourth.

Likewile all Verbs of the fourth Coniugation except those three last mentioned do end in io, which ending few of the first Coniugation have, as *faucio repudio bio concilio satio*, but many of the third end in cio dio gio pio rio tio, as *facio fodio facio capio pario percutio*.

Some Verbs admit of two Coniugations, being either commonly of the first and seldom of the third, as, *lauro lauas lauvavi lauvatum*, and *lavis lavi lauvatum*, or by Syncope *lauum* and by Antithesis *latum*, *sonosonas* and *sonis sonni sonitum*, so *tono tonas* and *tono tonus tonitum*; Or commonly of the second, seldom of the third, as *strideo strides*, and *strido stridis stridi*, *fulgeo fulges*, and *fulgo fulgis fulsi*, but *tergeo terges*, and *tergo tergis tersi*, are both common, *serueo serues*, and *seruo seruis serui*, *sorbeo sorbes sorbis sorbitum*, and *sorbo sorbis sorpsi sorptum*, *tueor tuers tuitus*, and *tuo tuetur tuus*, *oleo oles olus oleum* to grow, and *olo olis olus olitum* to smell. Or comonly of the second, seldom of the fourth, as, *cio ties cieui citum*, and *cio cis cieui citum*, the last being most usuall in composition, as the first being simple. Or commonly of the third and seldom of the fourth, as, *fodio fodis fodi fodere*, and *fodire fossum*, *orior oreris*, and *oritur ortus*, and such other.

Many

Many Verbs being the same in Theme do differ as in signification, so either in Coniugation only, as, *aggero appello compello colligo conserno deligo effero fundo mando observo volo*. Or likewise in quantity, as *dico lego* with their compounds, being all both first and last of the first and third Coniugation.

Sum with his Compounds are wholly irregular among Verbs, as, *Ego tu sui*, among the Pronouns. But *sui* conjugated with *sum* hath all tenses regular which are deriyed thence. And both *sum* and *sui* do require in order to be first declined by themselves, as helps expedient to forme in the Infinitive the future tense of all other Verbs ending both in *o*. and *or*. And in the Indicative the preter tense of Verbs only that end in *or*, and of all other tenses that are derived thence, which being otherwise Defective are to be supplied by *sum* and *sui*, joyned with the Participles of such Verbs, whereof before.

Examples of Verbs to be declined.

Sum es fui esse ens futurus to be.

So, *Absum abes abfui abesse absens abiturus*.

The Indicative Mood and present tense Singular.

Sum I am, *es* thou art, *est* he is.

Pluraliter.

Sumus we are, *estis* ye are, *sunt* they are;

The

The Preterimperfect tense Singular.

Eram I was, eras thou wast, erat he was.

Pluraliter.

Eramus we were, eratis, yet were, erant they were.

The Preterperfect Tense singular.

Fui I have been, fuisti thou hast been, fuit he hath been,

Pluraliter.

Fuimus we have been, fuistis yet have been, fuerunt vel fuere they have been.

The Preterpluperfect Tense singular.

Fueram I had been, fueras thou hadst been, fuerat he had been;

Pluraliter.

Fueramus we had been, fueratis yet had been, fuerant they had been.

The Future Tense singular.

Ero I shall or will be, eris thou shalt or wilt be, erit he shall or will be.

Pluraliter.

Erimus we shall or will be, eritis yet shall or will be, erunt they shall or will be.

The Imperative and Future singular.

Es, or esto, be thou hereafter, esto be he, or let him be hereafter.

Pluraliter.

Estote, or estote, be yet hereafter, sunt be they, or let them be hereafter.

The

The Subjunctive and Present Tense singular.

Sim, I may would or should be, sis, thou mayest wouldst or shouldst be, he may would or should be,

Pluraliter.

Simus, we may would or should be, sitis, ye may would or should be, sint, they may would or should be.

The Preterimperfect Tense singular.

Essem, or forem, I might would or should be, esses, or fores, thou mightest wouldst or shouldst be, esset, or foret, he might would or should be,

Pluraliter

Essemus, or foremus, we might would or should be, essetis, or foretis, ye might would or should be, essent, or forent, they might would or should be.

The Preterperfect Tense singular.

Fuerim, I might would or should have been, fueris, thou mightest wouldst or shouldst have been, fuerit, he might would or should have been.

Pluraliter

Fuerimus, we might would or should have been, fueritis, ye might would or should have been, fuerint, they might would or should have been.

The Preterpluperfect Tense singular.

Fuissem, I might would or should had been, fuisses, thou mightest wouldst or shouldst had been, fuisset, he might would or should had been,

Pluraliter

Pluraliter

Fuissimus we might would or should had been, fuissetis yee might would or should had been, fuissent they might would or should had been,

The Future Tense singular.

Fuero I may would or should be hereafter, fueris thou mayst wouldst or shouldst be hereafter, fuerit he may would or should be hereafter,

Pluraliter

Fuerimus we might would or should be hereafter, fueritis yee might would or should be hereafter, fuerint they might would or should be hereafter.

The Participle Mood.

The present tense ens being, or essens obsolet, whence both come essentia, the being.

The Future Tense, futurus about to be.

The Infinitive Mood.

The present, esse to be.

The preter tense, fuisse to have been.

The future fore, or futurum esse to be hereafter.

Annotations.

As Sum hath been declined, so may be formed Possum, compounded of potis and sum, and poteram, of potis eram, potui of potis fui, potueram of potis fueram, potero of potis ero, possum of potis sum, possem, of potis essem, potueram of potis fuerim, potuissem of potis fuissetim, potuero of potis fuero, posse of potis esse, potuisse of potis fuisse. So Prosum proderam profui profueram prodero, with the rest compounded thence.

Examples

Examples whereby may be declined Verbes
active and passive.

Am-	o	as	avi.	atum	aturus	ans
or	aris			atus	andus	
Mon-	eo	es ui.	itum	iturus	ens	
cor	eris			itus	endus	
Leg-	o	is i	rum	turus	ens	
or	eris			tus	endus	
Aud-	io	is	ivi	itum	iturus	iens
ior	iris			itus	iendus	

Examples of Verbes Neuter and Depo-
nent.

Pugn--	o	as	avi	atum	aturus	ans	andus
Rix---	er	aris	atum	atus	aturus	ans	andus

Examples of Verbs both in o; and or. Declined
throughout all Moods and Tenses.

The Indicative Mood and Present Tense.

	Singulariter.			Pluraliter		
Laud--	o	as	at	amus	atis	ant
	or	aris	et are	atur	amur	amini

Cent-eg

eo es et emus etis ent
 Cenf.

cor eris vel ere etur emor emini entur
 o is it imus itis unt

Fig. or eris vel ere itur imur imini untur
 io is it imus itis iunt

Pol. ior iris vel ire itur imur imini iuntur

The Pretorimperfect Tense singular.

abam abas abat
 Laud.

abar abaris vel abare abatur
 abamus abatis abant

Plur. abamur abamini abantur
 ebam ebas ebat

Cenf. ebar ebaris vel ebare ebatur
 ebamur ebatis ebant

Plur. ebamur ebamini ebantur
 ebam ebas ebar

Fig. ebar ebaris vel ebare ebatur
 ebamur ebatis ebant

Plur. ebamur ebamini ebantur
 iebam iebas iebat

Pol. iebar iebaris vel iebare iebatur
 Plur.

iebamus iebatis iebant.

Plur-

iebamur iebamini iebantur.

The Preterperfect tense singular.

avi

avisti

avit

Laud-

atus sum vel fui atus es v. fuisti atus est v. fuit.

avimus

avistis

Plur-

ati sumus v. fuimus, ati estis v. fuistis

averunt vel avere

ati sunt fuerunt vel fuere.

ui

uisti

uit

Cenf-

us sum v. fui us es v. fuisti us est v. fuit.

uimus

uistis

Plur-

i. sumus v. fuimus, i. estis v. fuistis

uerunt vel uere

i. sunt fuerunt vel fuere.

xi

xisti

xit

Fi-

xus sum v. fui, xus es v. fuisti, xus est

v. fuit.

ximus

xistis

Plur-

xi sumus vel fuimus, xi estis v. fuistis

xerunt vel xere

xi sunt fuerunt vel fuere.

ivi

ivisti

ivit

Pol-

itus sum v. fui itus es v. fuisti itus est v. fuit.

ivimus

ivimus ivistis

Plur-

iti sumus v. fuimus iti estis v. fuistis
iverunt vel ivere
iti sunt fuerunt vel fuere.

The Preterpluperfect tense singular:

averam averas averat

Laud-

atus eram v. fueram, atus eras v. fueras
atus erat vel fuerat.
averamus averatis

Plur-

ati eramus v. fueramus ati eratis v. fueratis
averant
ati erant vel fuerant.
ueram ueras uerat

Cenf-

us eram v. fueram us eras v. fueras us erat
vel fuerat.
ueramus ueratis

Plur-

i. eramus v. fueramus. i. cratis v. fueratis
uerant
i. erant vel fuerant.
xeram xeras xerat

Fi-

xus eram v. fueram, xuseras vel fueras xur
erat vel fuerat.
xeramus xeratis

Plur-

xi eramus v. fueramus. xi cratis v. fueratis
xerant
xi erant v. fuerant.

Pol-

Pol. **iveram** **iveras** **iverat**
itus eram v. fueram, itis eras v. fueras, itus
erat vel fuerat.

Plur. **iveramus** **iveratis**
iti eramus v. fueramus, iti eratis v. fueratis
iverant
iti erant vel fuerant.

The Future Tense singular.

Laud. **abo** **abis** **abit**
abor aberis vel abere abitur

Plur. **abimus** **abitis** **abunt**
abimus abimini abuntur

Conf. **ebo** **ebis** **ebit**
ebor eberis vel ebere ebitur

Plur. **ebimus** **ebitis** **ebunt**
ebimus ebimini ebuntur

Fig. **am** **es** **et**
ar eris vel esp erur

Plur. **emus** **etis** **ent**
emur emini entur

Pol.	iam	les	let
	lar	leris vel lere	letur
	icinus	ictis	icent
Plur.	icinus	icimini	icuntur.

The Imperative Mood and Future Tense.

	Sing.	Plur.	
	a vel aro	aro	ate vel atore.
Laud-	are v. ator	ator	amini v. aminor, anter.
	e vel eto	eto	ete vel etore.
Cenf.	ere v. etor	etor	emini v. emenor, entor
	e vel ito	ito	ite vel itore.
Fig-	ere v. itor	itor	imini v. iminor, untor.
	i. vel ito	ito	ite vel itore
Sep-	ire vel itor.	itor	imini v. iminor iuntor.

The Subjunctive Mood and present Tense.

	Sing.	Plur.	
	es	etis	emur
Laud-	er eris v. ere	etor	emur emini entur.

Cenf.

eam eas ear eamus earis eant
 Cenſ. ear earis v. eare eatur eamur eamini eantur.
 am as at amur atis ant

Fig- ar aris v. are arur amur amini antur.
 iam ias iat iamus iaris iant

Pol. iar iaris v. iare iatur iamur iamini iantur.

The Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing. arem ares aret Plur. aremus aretis arent

Laud- arer areris v. arere aretur aremur aremini
 arentur.

Cenſ- erem eres eret eremus eretis erent

erere ereris v. erere eretur eremur eremini
 erentur.

Fig- erem eres eret eremus eretis erent
 erere ereris v. erere eretur eremur eremini
 erentur.

Pol. irem ires iret iremus iretis irent
 irere ireris v. irere iretur iremur iremini
 irentur.

The Preterperfect tense singular.

averim averis averit

Laud. atus sim v. fuerim atus sis v. fueris atus sit v. fuerit.

averimus averitis

Plur. ati simus v. fuerimus, ati sitis v. fueritis
averint
ati sint vel fuerint.

uerim ueris uerit

Cenf. us sim v. fuerim us sis v. fueris us sit v. fuerit.

uerimus ueritis

Plur. i simus v. fuerimus i sitis v. fueritis
uerint
i sint vel fuerint.

xerim xeris xerit

Fig. xus sim v. fuerim xus sis v. fueris xus sit v. fuerit

xerimus xeritis

xi simus v. fuerimus xi sitis v. fueritis

xerint

xi sint v. fuerint.

iverim iveris iverit

Pol. itus sim v. fuerim itus sis v. fueris itus sit v. fuerit.

Plur.

(TOI)

iverimus

iveritis

Plur.

iti simus v. fuerimus iti sitis v. fueritis
iverint
iti sint v. fuerint.

The Præterpluperfect Tense

Singular.

avisssem

avisses

avisset

Laud-

atus essem v. fuisssem atus esses v. fuisset
esset v. fuisset.

avisssemus

avissetis

Plur.

ati essemus v. fuisssemus ati essetis v. fuissetis
avissent
ati essent v. fuissent.

uisssem

uisses

uisset

Cens-

us essem v. fuisssemus us esses v. fuissetis
fuisse vel
fuisset.

uisssemus

uissetis

Plur.

i essemus v. fuisssemus i essetis v. fuissetis
uissent
i essent vel fuissent.

xisssem

xisses

xisset

Fi-

xus essem v. fuisssem xus esses v. fuissetis
xus esset v. fuisset.

G 3

Plur-

xissemus

xissetis

Plur-

xi essemus v. fuissemus, xi essetis v. fuissetis

xissem

xi essent v. fuissent.

ivissem

ivisses

ivisset

Pol.itus essem v. fuissem itus esses v. fuisses itus
esset vel fuisset.

ivissemus

ivissetis

Plur-

iri essemus v. fuissemus iri essetis v. fuissetis

ivissem

iri essent v. fuissent.

The Future Tense Singular.

avero

averis

averit

Land-atus ero v. fuero atus eris v. fueris atus erit
vel fuerit.

averimus

averitis

Plur-

ati erimus v. fuerimus ati eritis v. fueritis

averint

ati erunt v. fuerint.

uero

ueris

uerit

Conf-us ero v. fuero us eris v. fueris us erit vel
fuerit.**Plur-**

Plur.

uerimus

i erimus v. fuerimus i eritis v. fueritis

uerint

i erunt v. fuerint

xero

xeris

xerit

Fig.xus ero v. fuero xus eris v. fueris xus erit
v. fuerit,

xerimus

xeritis

Plur.

xi erimus v. fuerimus xi eritis v. fueritis

xerint

xi erunt v. fuerint.

ivero

iveris

iverit

Pol.itus ero v. fuero itus eris v. fueris itus erit
v. fuerit

iverimus

iveritis

Plur.

iti erimus v. fuerimus iti eritis v. fueritis

iverint

iti erunt v. fuerint.

*The Participle Mood.**The Present Tense* Laud-ans, Cens-ens, Fig-ens
Pol. iens.*The first Future* Laud-aturus, Cens-urus, Fi-
xurus.

Pol. iturus.

The Preter Tense Laud-atus, Cens-us, Bi-gus;
Pol. itus.

The second Future Laud-andus, Cens-endus;
Fig-endus, sep-iendus.

The Infinitive Mood.

The Present Tense Laud- are ere ere
ari eri i

Pol. ire

iri.

avisse

The Preter Tense Laud-

atum esse vel fuisse.

Cens-

uisse

Fi-

xisse

um esse v. fuisse

xum esse v. fuisse.

Pol.

ivisse

atum esse v. fuisse.

atum ire v. aturum esse;

The Future Tense Laud-

atum iri v. andum esse.

Cens-

um ire v. urum esse

xum ire v. xurum esse.

Fi-

atum iri v. endum esse xum iri v. endum esse.

itum ire v. iturum esse

Pol.

itum iri v. iendum esse.

The Gerundivall Mood.

Laud-andum. Cens-endum. Fig-endum. Pol.
iendum.

The Supine Mood.

Laud-atum. Cens-um. Fi. xum. Pol. itum

ANNOTATIONS.

Students should be made exact in all the proper affections of Verbs, as before hath been required in the like affections of Nounes, for as more variable, so they are more difficult, and call for greater diligence, but Verbs chiefly, which will more exercise Learners to finde out the Theme then Nounes, because the Characteristicall is oftner changed therein; besides that many instances thereof must have recourse to sundry distinct heads before they are resolyed to their Themes, as for example, from *iuncturus*, cast away the Termination proper to the first future, and instead thereof, put to *m*, and it will be *iunctum*, the Supine whence it is formed: Then it may be remembered that *sum* in the Supine cometh from *xi* in the Preter Tense, as *iunctum* from *iunxi*, againe *xi* will come from *gis* in the present, so *iungis* maketh *iunxi*, that *iunctum* this *iuncturus*; from *hauserimus* cut of *erimus* and put *i* in place thereof it will be *hauri*, whence it is derived, as this from *hauris*. In *conferamini*, change the
second

Second Person Plurall to the first singular *censefer*, this to *censeferis*, and by a graduall regresse it leadeth unto *censeor*, according to the precedent Rules of forming Tenses in the severall Moods. So *Legitate* cometh from *lege*, this from *legis*, *audietis* cometh from *audiam*; this from *audis*, so *docendus* from *docens*, this from *doces*, and so in the rest.

Exceptions to the Generall Rules for the forming of Preter Tenses and Supines.

Verbs of the first Conjugation ending in *bas*, *cas*, *mas*, *nas*, *pas*, *tas*, change as to *ui*, *das* maketh *dedi*, *stas* *steri*, *juvas* *iuvi*. And all in the Supine end in *tum*.

Verbs of the second Conjugation making *bes*, *phiges*, *xi*, *ies* *icyi*, *les* *levi*, *ves* *vi*. In the Supine end all in *tum*. But making *des*, *di*, or *si*, *lces*, and *lges*, *li*, and *rges* *ri*, *nes* *ni*, *res* *si*. And the Deponent *teris* making *si* in the Supine end all in *sum*.

Verbs of the third Conjugation making *bis*, *bi* *bui*, or *psi*, *cis* *ci*, *cui*, or *xi* *scis*, *vi*, or *scui*: few Verbs making *dis*, *di*. Likewise other Verbs making *gis*, *gi*, or *xi*, *his*, *xi*, *lis* *lui*, *mis* *mui*, or *psi*, *nis*, *ni*, *vi*, or *ui*, *pis*, *psi*, *pi*, *pui*, or *pivi*, *quis*, *qui*, or *xi*, *ris*, *ru*, *vi* and *si* *si*, *ui*, *ivi*, or *si*, *apo-* *opated*. And some making *ris*, *ri*, *vis*, *vi*, or *xi*, *ui*, *xis* *xui*, in the Supine end in *tum*.

Other both Deponents making *beris*, *psi*, and Verbs two making *reis* *ri* *dis* *di*, or *si* *rgis* *ri*, *lis*, *lui*, *li* or *si*, *mis*, *si*, *rris* *ri*, *tis* *tui*, *rtis*, *ri*. In the Supine end in *sum*. Other

Other Verbs making *gis*, *his*, *dis*, or *uis*, *xi*, and *xis*, *xi*, or *xui* end in *xum*.

Verbs of the fourth Coniugation making *cis* *cui*, or *xi*, *lis* *lui*, *nis* *ni*, *pis* *pi*, *tis* *tui* or *ri*: in the Supine end in *tum*.

Other both Deponents making *diris* *di*, or Verbs in *o* making *dis*, *phi*, *cis*, *si*, *tis*, *si*, *tis*, *si* end in *sum*.

Examples of the former Exceptions, in
Verbs of the first Coniugation.

Cubas doth make *cubui* *cubum*, but thence come *cubatio* and *cubatorium*, all Compounds thence with interposing *m*, will be of the third Coniugation, as, *decumbis* *decubui* *decubitum*, and *ascubo*, *incubo*, *occubo*, *recubo*, may take *m* or leave it.

Necas *necavi* or *necui* *necatum*, or *nectum*, but the last is scarce used, saving in Composition, *secas* *se-cui* *sectum*, hath *secaturus*, *applicas*, *explicas*, *implicas* make *ui* or *avi*, *isum* or *atum*, but *plicas* maketh only *avi* & *atum*, *micas* *micui* doth want the Supine, but *emicas* *emicui* hath *emicaturus*, and *dimicas* hath *dimicui*, or *dimicavi* *dimicatum*, *fricas* *fricui* *frictum*, but *defricas* *defricui*, or *defricavi* *defricum*, or *defricatum*, *Das* *dedi* *datum*, so *circundas*, *possundas*, *satisfas*, *venundas*: but all other Compounds thence are of the third Coniugation, as, *condo* *condis* *condidi* *conditum*, and *abscondis* *abscondidi*, or *abscondi*, *absconditum*, or *absconsus*, *domas* *domui* *domitum*, but from *edomas* cometh *edomatio*.

Sonas *sonui* *sonitum*, whence cometh *sonabilis*, and *sonaturus*.

Crepas *crepui* *crepitum*, & *increpas* *increpui* *increpitum*, whence

whence cometh *inerepatio, discrepas discrepui*; and *discrepavi discrepitum*, and *discrepatum*.

Vetus vetui vetitum, whence cometh *vetaturus, stas steti statum*, but *astas astiti astitum*, and so all Compounds thence, saving that Supinall Derivatives love best the regular way, as, *prestatioris prestatio prestatibilis, Juvas Juvi*, whence doth come *invamen*; so *adiuvas adiuvi aditum*; *Lignas, nexas*, with many more want the Preter Tense, and therewith the Supine derived thence.

Examples of exceptions in the second Conjugation.

Sorbes sorbui sorbitum, and thence *sorbitio*, but *absorbes, absorbui* and *absorpsi absorptum*.

Misce muscui mistum, syncopated, and by Antithesis, *mixtum, mulces, mulsi mulsum, luces luxi* without Supine.

Suades suasi suasum, but *sedes sedi sessum, spondes spondendi sponsum, strides stridi* without Supine, *audes ausi, obsolet ausum, gaudes gavissum*, by Epenthesis, whence *gavissus sum*, The Preterperfect Tense supplied by circumlocution, and *ausus sum*, with *audeo*.

Indulges indulsi indulsum, & indultum, from obsolet *indulxi, fulges fulsi, iurges iurssi*, both want Supines, *terges tersti tersum, mulges mulsi multum*, from obsolet *mulxi*, so *auges auxi autum*.

Fles flevi fletum, nes nervi netum, cles cievi citum, vies vievi vietum, oles olui olitum, but *exoles*, and some other make *olevi oletum, veris ratum, tueris iurum, soles solitum*, from *solui*, obsolet for which *solitus sum* is in use.

Manes mansi mansum, but *emines eminui*, and the rest so formed want Supines.

Torques torsi torsum, and *torcum* from *torquatum*, obsolet syncopated, from both, *torso* and *torsilis*, *Hæres hæsi hæsum* and *hæsi*, by Epenthesis, *torres torruī torsūm* for *torritum*, by Syncope and Antithesis, so *misereris miserum*, Syncopated, and *censes censui censum*, for *censitum*, *fateris fateri fassum*, as if it were from *fates fassi*.

Mover movi motum, but *caves cavi cautum*, and *favet favi factum*, by Epenthesis.

Cales, cares, coales, doles, lates, lices, nocet, pares, places, races, vates, with their Compounds change to *ui* and that to *itum*, but all other Neuters making *ui* in the Preter Tense want the Supine.

Aves mederis meres vides nives want the Preter Tense and Supine, but the Compounds of *nives* have *nixi* and *nictum*.

Examples of the Exceptions in the third Conjugation.

Bibis bibi bibitum, *lambis lambi* wanting a Supine, *decumbis decubui decubitus*, *scribis scripsi scriptum*, *laberis lapsus*, as if it were from *labis lapsi*.

Isis ici istum, *parcis peperci parcius*, and *parsi parsum*, *dicis dixi dictum*, from obsolet *lacio elicio* doth make *eliciui elicitum*, but all other Compounds thereof make *lexi* and *lectum*, *noscis novi notum*, but *nosciturus* and *agnovi agnitum*, *cognovi cognitum*, *pascis pavi pastum*, but *compescui compescitum*, and *dispecisci dispecisci* doth want the Supine, *edipisceris adeptum*, as if it were from *adipis adepi*, and that from the obsolet simple *apo*, whence cometh *aprus*, *commisisceris* com-

commentum, as if it were from *cominis comini*, *exper-*
geris expergitum, and *experrectum*, as if it were from
expergis expergi or *experrexo*, *nascersis natum*, as if it
 were from *iras iravi*, *nanciscersis natum*, as if it were
 from *nancis nanci*, *obliscersis oblitus*, from *oblivis ob-*
liui, *pascersis pactum*, as if it were from *pacis paci*,
profiscersis profectum, from *proficis profeci*, *desercersis*
desessum, as if it were from *desereo desetis desessi*, *ulciscer-*
is ultum, for *ulcitur*, as if it were from *ulciui ulcui*,
claudis clausi clausum, *edis edi esum*, but *comedis com-*
edi comesum, or *comestum*, *gradis gressum*, as if it were
 from *gradis gressi*, so *cedis cessi cessum*, *fidis fidi fissum*,
cadis cecidi casum, whole Compounds want Supines,
occasum and *recasum*, with *incaurus*, being excepted,
pedis pepedi pedicium, *tendis terendi tensum*,
 & *tenum* *tundis tutudi tusum*, and *tunsi tunsum*, *pandis*
pandi passum, for *pansum*, by Anitthesis.

Fugis fugi fugitum, *regis rexi rectum*, *frigis frixi*
frixum, and *fristum*, *frangis fregi fractum*, *pugis pu-*
pugi and *punxi punctum*, *uebis vexi vectum*, but *con-*
uebis convexi conuictum and *convexum*.

Alis ului alrum, for *alitur* so *colis colui cultum*, *ex-*
tellis excolui excelsum, *vellis velli* and *vulsi vut-*
sum.

Gemis gemui gemitum, *premis pressi proffum*, *comis*
compsi comptum, the labial *m* affecting the cognates
 (*p*) for its companion, so *emis emi*, and of old *empsi*
emprum, *simis simi* hath no Supine, *simis* is used for
positus by Aphæresis, *spemis sprevi spretum*, by Meta-
 thesis, for *spervi spervum*, so *decernis* with such other
 Compounds, *crevi cretum*, for *cerni*, the simple
 doth want the Preter Tense and Supine likewise,
tenis wanteth both, but *consonnis consempsi con-*
temptum

emptum, *gignis* *genui* *genitum* from obsolete *genuis*, *ponis* *posui* *positum*, *capis* *cocini* *cantum*, but *succinis* with some others make *cipui* *centum*, *strepis* *strepui* *streptum*, *rumpis* *rupi* *ruptum*, *carpis* *carpsi* *carpum*, *sapis* *sapiui* or *sapivi* *sapium*, *coquis* *coxi* *coctum*, *linguis* wanting *Preter Tense*, and *Supine* hath Compounds that make *liqui* *luctum*, *loqueris* *locutum*, *sequeris* *secutum*, as if it were from *loquis* *loqui*, *sequis* *sequi*, *Teris* *trivi* *tritum*, by Metathesis, *moreris* making *mortuus*, for *moritus*, whence is *moriturus*, likewise *oreris* *ortum*, whence is *oriturus*, *quaris* *quaesivi* *quaesum*, *quereris* *questum*, Syncopated, *seris* *sevi* *satum*, but *conseris* *consevi* *consitum*, with such other changing in the *Supine* *a* to *i*, *conseris* *conserui* doth make *consertum*, the first coming from the Greek Verb *σπew*, the last from *eire*, *geris* *gessi* *gestum*, *verris* *verri* *versum*.

Arcessis *arcessivi* being of the fourth Conjugation now obsolete, and by Syncope *arcessii*, by Apocope, *arcessi*, *pinis* *pinui* *pinsum* *pinsum* and *pinsum* Syncopated, *depsis* *depsui*, whence cometh *depositus*, and *visis* *visi*, without *Supine*.

Flectis *flecti* *flexum*, *plectis* *plexi* to punish, *plexui*, to fold, have *plectum*, and *plexum*, *pectis* *pexi* and *pexiui* *pezum*, and *pectum*, or *pectitum*, by Epenthesis, *metis* *messui* *messum*, *mittis* *missi* *missum*, *veris* *veri* *versum*, *stertis* *stertui* *Supine* *esse*, *niteris* *nisum* or *nizum*, *uteris* *usum*, *pateris* *passum*, from obsolete *patis* *passi*, *vivis* *vixi* *victum*, *solvis* *solvi* *solutum*. *Statuas* *statui* *statuum*, *ruis* *ruui* *ruitum*, but *diruis* *dirui* *dirutum*, with such other, casting away *i* from the *Supine* resumed in the first Future, as, *diruiturus*, *frueris* whence *fruitus*, and by Epenthesis *fruitus*, by Crasis *fruius*; likewise *fructus*, as if it were from *frui* *fruxi*, *fruius* *fruxi* *fructum*, *fluas* *fluxi* *fluxum*;

hath only a Preter tense, and such as are deri-
ved thence.

ANNOTATIONS.

Some Verbs in *g*, as *do*, *sto*, and others of the se-
cond and third Conjugacion will Greek-wise
double the first Consonant in the Preter tense for
the most part with *g*, and in some Verbs with *i*, *o*,
and *n*, as *dedi*, *steti*, *didici*, *poposeti*, *curru*, *pugu*,
which six commonly have the same syllable
doubled in their Compounds, as *addidi*, *constiti*,
changing *e*, to *i*, *perdidici*, *depoposeti*, *præcurru*, *re-*
pugu, but all other Compounds from simples
doubling the first syllable, reject any such increase,
as *pendes* hath *pendi* *pensum*, but *dependes* *dependi*
dependum; Likewise the former Verbs both simple
and compounds cast off the increase in Supines, so
curru *cursum*, and *præcurru* *præcursum*.

Diverse Verbs concur in the same Preter-
tense, and others in the same Supine, as, *fulges* and
fulsis make *fulsi*, *lucet* and *luges* *luxi*, *paves* and
pascis *pavi*; Likewise *manet* and *mandis* make *man-*
sum, *tenet* and *tendit* *tentum*, *vincit* and *viris* *vi-*
ctum, *verrit* and *veris* *versum*.

Many Verbs compounded have a Preter tense,
or Supine, or derivatives thence, whose simples
are therein defective; And contrariwise: as from
liquat defective in the Preter tense and Supine
come *liquamen* *liquatio* *liquabilis* and *deliquatus*; So
from *nus* *nunusum* *nupen* being regular, there be
compounds defective, as *abnuis*, and moreover ir-
regular supines have many derivatives from the
regular wanting, as, *adiuvamen* *adiuvatus*, from
adiuvi *aditum*, whereof more instances are in the
severall Conjugations: Some Compounds with

changing

Changing the first vowell of their simples differ hence in the Preter tense, and others in the Supine. So *emines* hath *eminus* from *manes mansi*: thus *cantum*, *captum*, *carptum*, *factum*, *factum*, *iactum*, *partum*, *raptum*, *sparsum*, change *a*, to *e*, as *concentum* *deceptum*, with many other changes notified in the Conjugations.

Of Verbs Anomalous.

There be three sorts of Verbs irregular, the Heteroclitous the Redundants, and the Defectives.

Of Heteroclitos.

Verbs swarving from the regular Coniugations (besides *Sum*) are these following, *volo* and his compounds, making *vis*, *vult*, *volumus*, *ultis*, for *volis*, *volis*, *volumus*, *volitis*; and *nolo* for *nole*, *nolito*, *velim* for *volam*, *vellem* for *volerem*, *velle*, *fer*, *volere*, so *fers*, *feri*, *fertis*, for *feris*, *ferit*, *feritis*, *fer*, *ferio*, *ferre*, *fertote*, for *ferre*, *ferio*, *ferite*, *feritote*, *ferrem*, *ferre* for *fererem*, *ferere*, *fer*, *fero*, being both of the third Coniugation. Likewise *firem*, *fieri* for *firem*, *fire* from *fi* of the fourth coniugation. Where may be noted that *facio* being defective in the figure to be made a passive hath the neuter *fi*, instead thereof, not only in the simple, but also in all compounds which keep *facio* intire, as, *calefacio*, *calefi*, but other compounds changing *a*, to *i*, will be made passives, as, *afficio*, *afficior*. Likewise the neuter, *Fe*, as it hath all three persons will not be made passive, but Compounds thence being Verbs Active will forme a Passive voice, as, *ador*, *ambior*, which last doth forme all tenses regularly, but *ibo* in the Preter imperfect tense maketh *ibam* for *ibam*, and *ibo* for *iam* in the future. And so do other

other compounds thence. Likewise *tenet* out of use doth make *euntis*, so *abiens* with other compounds thence in use make *abeyuntis*. *Queo* and *nequeo* make also *quibam* and *quibo*, whence are (though seldome) found *queundus* *quitus* and *nequitus*. *Edd* hath *es* *est* and *estis* redundant with *edis* *edit* and *editis*, so *ede* *edito* *edite* *editote*, or *es* *esto* *este* *estote*, so *ederem* or *estem*, *edere* or *esse*. Lastly *dic* *duc* *fer* and *fac* are apocopated with all compounds thence excepting such from *facio* which change *a*, to *i*, as *afficio* making *affice*.

Of Redundants.

Redundant futures being Imperatives or Infinitives of Verbs in *o*, and *or*, (except *scio* and *scito*, with all compounds thence as *calefio*, *rescito*, admitting no redundance) And the second person singular of Verbs in *or*, redundant in the Indicatives present, preterimperfect and future tense, and in the Subjunctives present and preterimperfect tense together with Verbs redundant in Conjugation are notified in their proper places. Other Verbs redundant in forme or sundry senses according to their sundry structure, being either Active or Neuter, as *audio* *vocem*, or *bene audio* *fastidio* *re*, or *tui*, *Rus habitat*, or *secum*, *offendit* *gemmam*, or *caspite*, *cohunt* *societatem*, or *una*, *glacies* *aquam* *durat*, or *durare* *nequit*, *incipit* *diem*, or *a die*, *vos* *manemus*, or *vobiscum*, *huc* *ruit*, or *ruit*, *arvis* *acervos*, *sufficit* *viminibus*, or *dies* *non sufficit*, *virtus* *erat* *superat*, or *ne dum* *superat*, *terram* *vertimus*, or *res* *bene vertit*. Nos, *quoties* *variant* *animi*, *variabimus* *artem*, *me* *minum* *accidis*. *Occidis* *spes* *nostra*, *Rem* *ad* *Senatum* *re-* *at*, or *de* *his* *rebus* *refert*, *sapit* *cullinam*, or *ad* *Ge-*

nium, omnino depercat, qui opes deperit. Nugas non moror sub dio moraturus.

Other Verbs are Active or Neuter and Depo-
nent, as *comito* and *comitor*, so *comperio*, *fabriscō*,
impertio merco munero populo putuo: Likewise *assenti-*
tio, vergo, lachrymo modero vago.

Of Verbs defective in Moods.

The Verbs called Impersonalls have no Imper-
ative mood, but instead thereof are used to the
Subiunctive. And both they and other Verbs spo-
ken of before want Supine, Gerund, and Parti-
ciple Moods; for such of that kinde as they do
retaine become Nounes, admitting no cases of their
Verbs, as, *vis penitendi* for *penitentia*, *id nego lici-*
turum, for *legitimum fore.*

Of Verbs defective in Tenses.

In the first Conjugation Verbs Denominatives
and diminutives, besides others spoken of already
do want the Pretertense, and Derivatives thence
together with all their compounds, as, *cortico*,
cornicor sorbillo piriſſo. And *decortico*, &c.

In the second Conjugation most Verbs neuters
want the Pretertense, & other Derivatives thence,
as *aveo, clueo, denseo, flaveo, glabreo, luceo*, with o-
thers before mentioned.

In the third Conjugation all Verbs inchoative
or augmentative ending in *sco*, as *augesco*, with o-
thers before notified want also the Pretertense,
and its Derivatives.

In the fourth Conjugation few Verbs do want
the Pretertense excepting meditative, whereof
two only have it, to wit, *patioris patirivis*, and
esurio esurivis esuriturum.

All Verbes in *or* of any Coniugation, and Verbs neuter passive want the Preter tense, saying in the Participle Mood whence the rest are supplied by circumlocution as hath been aforesaid.

Verbs in *o* and *or* want the Future in the Infinitive as it is before instanced, *suesco* and *sbleo* want all futures, as repugnant to their signification.

Of Defectives in Person.

Dor and *for* be never used saying in composition as, *addor* *affor* and the first person both singular and plural, is defective in all Verbs of the Imperative. Likewise Verbs called Impersonalls, are never used in the first or second Person of either number or in the third plurall, except onely few Verbs neuter with a Nominative of the thing, as, *libet, licet, liquet, decet, pudet, taedet, piget, paenitet miseret oportet*, all of the second Coniugation, but in other Coniugations, or in any of the passive voice, such Verbs are never used in the plurall, as *benefit, malefit, satisfi, statui, sedetur, curritur, itur*, and others in the Preter tense only, and Derivatives thence, as, *pudicum, pigritum, libitum, licitum, pertasum benefactum est vel fuit*.

Other Verbs are most improperly called Impersonalls being found familiarly to be Verbs Personall, though more frequently used to the third person, as *delectat, attingit, accidit*, &c. *capibus te delectas*, or *tu delectaris*. And such are Verbs of exempt power, as, *sanste dies vespersasti murmure sero verberibusque totias*: which are indeed more commonly read in the third Person singular, the rest being usually understood, as, *lucescit* supply *dies fulminat*, supply *Jupiter, pluit*, supply *Calum*.

Of Defectives in severall affections.

All Verbs are defective being used adverbially, whether as Adverbs of intreating, as, *te queso*, or *quaesumus*, so *vos amabo*, *sodes* for *si audes*, or as Adverbs of exhorting, *age ogedum*, or of shunning, as *lites apagite*, or of granting, as *dextram cedo*, for *cedito* and *cette* for *cedite*. Likewise *sis sultis*, for *fruis si vultis*, with their compounds, *apagesis capsis carvesis*, *vide sis*, or of explaining, *licet*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, for *ire*, *scire*, *videre*, *licet*.

Other Verbs are also defective in sundry affections, whether they be of rejoycing, as, *ovae ovans ovatus*, or of greeting: *ave aveto avete avetote*, *avere*. *Salvebis salve salveto salвете salverote salvere*. *valebis vale valet valet valetote valere*, or of affirming, *aiō ais ait aiunt*, *aiebam aiebas aiebat aiebatis aiebant*, *aias aiāt aiatis aiāt aiens*, *inquam inquis inquit inquit inquit*, *inquebam inquebas inquebat inquebatis inquebant*, *inquisi inquistis inquistis inquistis inquistis*, *inquies inquiet inque inquite*, *inquas inquis inquis inquis inquis*.

These Verbs of the preter tense have the rest derived thence, *fui tui tenui odi capi memini*, &c. moreover *odi* hath *osurus*, and *exosus perosus*, *Cepio* and *capiam* are seldom used but *captum* and *capturus*, from *capi* are very common. *Memini* hath *memento* and *mementote* with the Supine, *mentum*, whence is *memio*; *desit* for *desit* hath *desiet desiat desieri*, *Incipit* for *incipit*, is single, going alone, *ausim* from *absolet ausi* of *audet*, *duim* from *dui* for *dedi*, *axim* and *saxim* from *axi saxi*, for *egi feci*, *factus faciendum* from *absolet facior*, *latum latus laturus* from *flag* a Greek Verb.

Lastly

Lastly it should be remembered what was before advertised in the Nounes, that no simples be joyned in Conjugation that are not formed a like in composition, as, *Sum* may be conjugated with *sui forem fore*, because *absūm* hath *absūi*, *absorēm* *absore* *fio* hath *factus* and *faciendus*, because *repose* hath *repesactus* and *tepe faciendus*, *fero* hath *ruli* and *latus*, because *desero* hath *deuli*, and *delatus*; which formes other Verbs will not imitate.

Of ADVERBES.

The Adverbs (being invariable, saving by a different figure) is so called because it referreth to some other word, whether Noun, Verb, or other Adverb for a clearer declaration of their meaning in sundry circumstances, as, *Vos autem sociosque omnes Diu quam diutissime conservate incolumes.*

The formes of Adverbs.

There be three kinds of Adverbs.

1. Some absolutely significant of themselves vulgarly called Adverbs.
2. Some respectively significant, as uniting words or sentences called Conjunctions.
3. Some meere subserbient to oblique cases of the Substantives, notifying either rest, wherein resteth some Act or passion, or motion whereto, or whence the same do tend.

The kinds of absolute Adverbs.

1. **Adverbs** are 1. **Some Interrogatives** asking a question that concerne either 1. the being, as, Num nunquid an utrum, and the encliticall Ne: or 2. The cause, as quare quapropter quamobrem, quid ita, quidni, quin for cur non. or 3. The place, quo, quorsum unde utro qua. or 4. The time, quando quandiu quousque quoad (and ubi an Interrogative of place and time) or 5. The number quoties: or 6. The quality, as qui quomodo, or 7. The quantity, as quam quantum quantopere. All which except the first desisting to be Interrogatives become Indefinites: and many of them will be Relatives answering to some precedent Adverb, as Tunc sapis quando files; ubi sunt amici, ibidem opes.

2. **Some** requirring an attentivenesse, as ecce, and sometimes heus.

3. **Some** inviting, or therewith exhorting, as exhortum eia tuge agendum.

4. **Some** affirming, or therewith interpreting, as etiam ita quidem certe profecto sane plane maxime quippe nempe nimirum scilicet videlicet.

5. **Some** used in swearing, as Pol Edepol Ecceastor Mehercule Mediusfidius, for me Dios filius, &c.

6. **Some** bee of doubting, as forte forsit forsitan forsan fortassis fortasse finis.

7. **Some** are for uniting, as pariter simulque una.

8. **Some** for severing either with choise, as potius immo satius magis, or without choise, as seor-

seorsum secus aliter singulatim viridum bifariam
ynice duntaxat solum tantum modo solummodo.

9. Some are of wishing, as Utinam si o si.

10. Some of forbidding, as ne neutiquam
nequaquam.

11. Some used in denying, haud nihil, or nil
for non, nec neque nequidem, or parum minime; or
those used in forbidding.

12. Some are of quality, Splendide fortiter
falso, rapim incassum frustra perperam, and
Greek-wise, lugubre torvum acerba recens.

13. Some of quantity either with remission,
sensim belle vix ægre paululum modicum, or with
intension, satis valde adeo sane quod, nimis ferme
fere penè prope propemodum prorsus omnino pe-
nitus multum magnopere; and such in Com-
parison may respect either only quantity, as
minus minime magis maxime, or quality and
quantity together meliuscule doctius doctissi-
me.

14. Some are of likeness or proportion, qua-
si seu sic sicut sicuti tanquam iuxta prope ut uti
velut veluti quemadmodum tanquam all relative
and æque perinde, answered by atque or ac, so
quam to which last ante or prius oft referre, & ei-
ther of both may be Elliptical in some structure,
as altero die quam mortuus est febricitavit, for
antequam.

15. Some of place, signifying either, 1. In
or at a place, hic illic istic ubique vbivis ubi-
cunque alibi uspiam humi domi, &c. ubi ubi
may be added according to their several senses,
Juxta prope answering to procul, so infra supra
intra extra pone, or post, and ante, or coram, foris,
and intus, or 2. To a place, huc illuc istuc, eo
quo

qua aliquo quocunque iatro foras peregre, 02 3. **Towards a place**, quorsum sursum deorsum introsum retrorsum. 02 4. **From a place**, hinc illinc inde unde aliunde exlitus funditus radicitus inferne superne desuper cominus e minus, 02 5. **By a place**, as hac illac istac ea qua qualibet quacunque recta, where with may be supplied via.

16. **Some of time** either finite, nunc tunc rum mox jamjam illico hodie eras heri pridie postdie perendie nudius tertius for nunc est dius tertius, donec quousque quoadusque quoad ejus quandiu quamprimum antequam: 02 indefinitely, iampridem dudum olim quando aliquando mane sero lucivesperis semper indies iugiter nunquam tandem cito nuper.

17. **Some equally** belong both to time and place, usque procul post quo hactenus ubi unde.

18. **Some broken time and quantity**: lepuscule.

19. **Some place and quantity** longiuscule.

20. **Some are of number** either finite, semel bis ter decies centies millies so millies bis 02 bis ex millies, 02 indefinitely of number and time, toties quoties crebro saepe raro iterum rursus.

21. **Some of order** with time 02 place, primo secundo, &c.

22. **Some of passion** called Interjections, because inserted as those Parentheses importing commonly by unperfect sentences some subdramatic motions of the mind tending either to a wonder Infandum immane phy papz hui, 02 1. ioi eyax io: 02 3. Laughter ha ha he. 02 4. **Scorne** hem vah proh; 02 5. **fear**, as atar; 02 6. **Disparage**, hei heu cheu hoi ah. 02 7. **Threat** vz malum, 02 8. **Silence** ault.

Of Adverbiall Constructions.

The imperfect sense accompanying Interjections may be made up to a perfect sentence in the first sort of them, by *hæc maius est*. In the second by *plaudite*, in the third by *quis abstineat cachinno*. In the fourth by *sordet enim*, or *facessat*. In the fifth by *caveatur*: In the sixth by *res est lugubris*. In the seventh, by, *imprecor*. In the last by *obmutescite*, where may be noted that some Interjections, as *infandum* *immane*, *malum*, are Substantives, wherewith *est* should be supplied *heci* and *vz* stand for Substantives before with a Descriptive Adjective, as *heci* or *vz mihi*, for *meus dolor est*. And others leave the sentence annexed to be finished with knowne supplementes, as, *hem tibi Dædum*, supply *affero*; *chodum ad me*, supply *accedito* *heu conditio-nem magistratus administrandi*, supply *desco*, *proh Deum atque hominum fidem*, supply *obtestor*, where Verbs of the same signification are easie to be found.

Adverbs of place, time and quantity being made Pronouns before, are construed, the two first with Gentives of their own signification, the last with any that may be their Substantives, being pronominall Adjectives, as *nusquam loci*, *tunc temporis*, for *nullo loco eo tempore*, *parum lucri*, *multum laboris*, for *par-vum lucrum multus labor*.

Other Adverbs admit the cases of their Pri-mitives, as *dixit optime omnium*, supply *nu-mero*, because we say *optimus omnium*, *quo fa-miliarior eo reliquis fidentius accedit*, *propius fer-*

fur nunc a terris, nunc ad cælos, castra propius urbem moventur, proxime, et proximius Pompeium sedebat, Tibi similiter vivit, utiliter nulli, nedum naturæ convenienter.

The kinds of Conjunctive Adverbs.

Conjunctive Adverbs are some meer **Copulatives** either. 1. Joyning both words and their meaning, as, et que enclitically, quoque ac atque nec neque cum or tum with tum non modo sed etiam. Or 2. coupling words but severing their signification, as ve enclitically, vel aut seu five.

2. Some meer **Adversatives**, sed at aut tamen tamen vero verum atqui quin alioquin ceteroquin nisi præterquam.

3. Some **Adversatives**, but withall concessive, etsi tamen si etiam si quanquam quanvis licet cō.

4. Some **Discretives**, saltem vel ad minus certe ut minimum.

5. Some **Causals**, nam namque enim etenim, ut quid quum quoniam quandoquidem ne non in quantum quatenus siquidem.

6. Some **Conditionals**, si fin modo nisi dum dummodo.

7. Some **Illatives**, Ergo ideo igitur quare itaque proinde idcirco quapropter quamobrem.

8. Some **Comparatives**, as all **Adverbs** of likeness.

9. Some **Electives**, immo potius magis non adeo ut, secus et aliter quam non æque ac, &c.

10. Some **Continuatives**, præterea nec non item porro cæterum insuper ad hæc.

11. Some

11. *Some Ordinate*, primo deinde demum denique, &c.

12. *Some Completive*, nam quidem equidem profecto certe autem.

ANNOTATIONS.

The *Conjunctive Adverbs* have no share in regence of Cases, Moods or Tenses, whose construction wholly dependeth every where upon some other regents, as in the following instance, *Notter patricique totius extraneis tamen haud aequo patronus, Rome ac Venetiis nauti, aut pro nibilo habetur, non secus ac si de fraude vel furti reus esset*: where may be noted, that Moods and Tenses must be suitable to the matter spoken of without reference to such conjunctive cementaries: And subsequent Moods must be regulated by the precedent in every period, as hath been instanced in the variation of the Subjunctive, Optative, Potentiall, and Infinitive, else they need no guidance.

The kinds of Prepositional Adverbs.

Prepositional Adverbs commonly attend a circumstance of time or place or persons, were instead of places, or else do accompany Nouns that signify either a part, or an entire cause, whether of the person or of the thing, or otherwise a qualification of the thing. And it is proper for the prepositional Cum like a Copulative

esse to loyne causes, but for absque sine præter, to
seber causes. The same Prepositions will
differ in signification as the cases differ where-
on they attend. And moreover they will differ
in their sense by apposition to, or composition
with words of different senses, as in the ex-
amples following.

Prepositions serving to the Genitive.

Ergo tenus
Virtutis ergo for *gratia*, *Cumarum tenus*, for
usque ad earum terminos.

Prepositions serving to the Acquisitive.

Obviam præsto propius.
It *obviam* hostium conatibus, for *contra* conatus, nec
nullum est manellum *obviam* fucis, for *pro* fucis, *præsto*
sum tibi, for *juxta* te sum, *propius* accedit tibi, for
ad urbem.

Prepositions serving to the Dative
Ablativall.

A ab abs absque sine cum ex e de præ pro
coram palam procul.
A Scipione superatus est referring to the agent.
A rationibus *a* studiis, *a* pugione, *a* secretis, supply,
præfatus officio: *Ab* Romuli gente, supply, *ortus a*
Cumanis rediit, for *a Cumis*, *a* millibus passuum te præ-
solatur, for *millium intervallo a* verberibus impunitas
for *quantum ad verbera*, *a* frigore myrtes defende, for
contra frigus, Catonis *a* morte, for *post mortem*, *Ab* te
fleat Senatus, for *pro te*, pastor *ab Amphrys*, for
Amphrysus. *Absque metu*, for *hoc amato*, *sine Cerere*

et Baccho friget Venus, or iis deficientibus, cum fratre
 Quirino Rhemus iura dabant, for Rhemus et frater,
 Summa cum humanitate nos excepit, for humanissime
 cum hoste pugnatur, for contra hostem, benefaciendo
 secum cirsant, for inter se. Ex auro integrum vas,
 for omnino aureum, usually referring to the matter,
 ex illo tempore celeberrimus, for post id tempus, vox e
 celo, for a celo audita, ex usu, or commodo, or dig-
 nitate nostra, for ad usum, &c. Illud est e republica,
 for pro Republica, ex Platonis sententia, for se-
 cundum eius sententiam. De Senatu audui, for a
 Senatu, de moribus oratio, for circa mores, or qua in his
 versatur. Præ amore misera, for per amorem, præ oculo,
 for ante oculos; Ceteri præ se uno viles, for præter te
 unum, or secum collati. And the case of a Demon-
 strative may be Ellipticall, as res omnes relictas
 habeo præ quod tu velis. Pro amicis feci, for ami-
 cis causa, pro manibus stat, for ante mania, pro contem-
 ne venit, for contionaturus, pro viribus egit, for impenss-
 sime pro Prætoris, for Prætoris vice, pro Turribus ad-
 stant, for Turrium tutela, habetur, pro vidua, for tan-
 quam vidua, sanequam pro et ac debui moleste iuli,
 for non prout arbi, pro facultate, for secundum vi-
 res.

Coram nobis, for nostri presentia, coram Senatu, for
 in eo. And Coram differeth from ante, as properly
 importing neerness; whereas ante admitteth di-
 stance. It differeth likewise from palam, that Being
 determined by its case to certaine persons, this be-
 ing used indefinitely to any persons; As palam po-
 pulo, for quolibet adveniente.

Procul urbe, for ab urbe.

Prepositions serving to the Accusative

Apud penes ad adversus ante pone post circum citra, intra, trans, ultra, extra, intra, infra, supra, præter ob contra, erga, iuxta, prope secus secundum per præter.

Apud forum agitur, for in foro; apud me aliquandiu forecupio, for solus, apud Mantuam, for prope illam, apud nos frugum copia, for nobiscum, nos penes sunt divitiæ, for sub nostra dominio. Thus apud, and penes differ, the first noting presence, the last possession.

Ad tribunal se Index confert, for intra tribunal litigator se recipit ad tribunal, for usque ad, or ante. Ad balneas moritur, for apud eas, ad exercitum manet, for in eo. Ad hæc tempora reversurus, for circum hæc, tendens ad sidera palmas, for sidera versus, hæc nunti ad nostras artes, for præ nostris, or cum nostris comparata, non nisi ad tres annos peragatur, for post tres annos. Panditur ad nullas ianua, magna preces, for ob, or propter nullas. Ad Iudicis pedes procidis, for ante pedes. Ad mea mala hoc accessit, for præter ætia. Ad eius arbitrium, for iuxta suum. Ad speciem magnificus, for secundum speciem. Ad multam noctem, for sero noctis. Ad Cyathos, supply delegatus, mulieres ad unum perage, for simul, or una. Comædia ad verbum translata, for exacte. Ad summam, for denique.

Adversum hostes, for contra illos, adversus amicos tendit, for erga ipsos, domum versus, and such like, have ad constantly implied with them, which sometimes is expressed. Ad Tiberim versus, but in more commonly, versus in utramque partem, quoquo versus, are both absolute Adverbs, like sursum versus, save

saye that the first stand for Aptotes.

Ante Campa vel Senaculum *ant* *Senatores*, referring to time, place, and persons and with Adverbs of time, it is often Elliptically understood, *pridie Calendas*, for *ante Calendas*.

Pone castra, referring only to place, for *post ea*, *sa post Cyatere tegebat* for *pone cyatere*, *post tres annos*, for *totidem peractis*, *post Regem secundum*, for a Reges, *post nummos virtus*, for *nummi virtutis*, *prope illis*, *Circum theatra* referring to place only, *circa meridiem*, for *prope illud*, referring to time, *quindecim circiter dies*, referring to time and number, *circa nos aut urbem aut id temous*, referring to persons, place, and time.

Cis Alpes, *aut Padum* *supra montes* *aut flumina* the first being used to proper names, the last to Appellatives both answering to their opposites *trans* and *ultra*, the three last referring with place to time and agents.

Circa calendas for *ex hac parte calendarum*, or *ante calendas*, *ultra calendas*, for *post ea*, or *ex altera parte*, *citra ius*, for *in eo jure*, *ultra famam*, for *superam*, *citra vel ultra*, *ultra vel extra modum*, for *ex* or *minus moderate*, the first used for remission, the last for intention, *extra m. um* for *sine iura nullus extra te adire* for *propter te*.

Inter nos *his* *est*, for *propter nostra* *is*, *inter ludas* for *dum ludas celebrantur*, *fabulantur*, *inter eximium*, for *interius*, *diligunt alii alios inter se*, for *intericem*, or *interio*, *infra dignitatem*, for *nulla dignitatis habita ratione*, *infra sex dies*, for *ante sex dies*, *infra idem*, for *in idem*.

Supra mare *aut nullum*, for *amplius mare*, *supra caute nobis*, *periculum*, for *propter*, commonly importing hearkens so differing it from *super*, which

may imply a distance. Propter vos, aut vestram
amicitiam, for vestri gratia, propter humanam voluntatem,
for prope humanam, propter scelus vapulas, for sceleris
meritis, ob stultitiam penas luit, for propter, ob Romam
regiones duxit, for ad Romam, ob oculos versatur, for
ante oculos.

contra Tibbas sita, for e Tiberiarum regione
contra prodones expeditio, for adversum eos, pietas
erga parentes, for hostia demeritis.

juxta aquor, for prope illud, juxta famulas ope-
ram navat, for unicum isdem, adsum iuxta te, for
tibi auxiliaturus, juxta, for apud Capuam, iuxta Pat-
ronem doctissimus, for secundum, or post Varronem.

Prope id opidum, for iuxta illud. Secus aquarum
decursus, for prope illos, Secundum naturam, for ak-
tualiter, secundum voluntatem, for iuxta illam, se-
cundum autem vulneratus, for prope aurem, Mea
secundum patrem hereditas, for post patrem. Frater
secundum me decrevit, for pro me, proxime de se-
cundum Deos homo praestantissimus, for Deis tantummodo
minor, magis secundum quietem mihi obversabatur, for
in somno, secundum officia deliberatur, for de officiis
or super ea.

Per diem operor, for toto die, per Laboratum prop-
tior, for ibidem transeo, via secus per ambas, for
inter ambas, per Deos, for his testibus et vindicibus, per
patriam obsecro, for eius gratia, per me ventur fies, for
mea opera, per astatem lites, for state non obstante,
per gratiam bellam abis, for cum gratia, per me in-
dus, for mea verba per ludicrum, for idcirco, quia illa
sunt pre se amabilia, for ex sua natura, or pro sua vir-
tute, per spem, for nequaquam re, per bellum feci, for
otiosus, per ebrietatem lites oriuntur, for ab ebrietate,
per idcirco, for causa illud, per sus & fidem deceptus
et prolatu fide per se facit de fiant in fide, for tu
potest

potestate. *Præter* for *ultra* hoc, *vobis* alia obijci-
batur multa, *præter* nostras mores atque leges, for *contra*,
præter oculos Domini sua disphebantur bona, for
ante oculos, *præter*, for *supra* modum, omnes res *præ-*
ter ducem, for *nisi* dux, or *hoc* uno excepta.

*Prepositions serving both the Accusative and
the Dative Ablative.*

In sub *subter* *super* *clam* *circum* *inter* *intra*
In vos benevolentia, for *erga* vos, *in* rebelles pugna
for *contra* rebelles, *appulsi* *in* portum, for *ad* portum,
insuetum *in* duos menses indicitur, for *quandiu* duo
præterea, *In* as latuisti, for *coram*, or *hæ* conspectu.
In vos fiet exemplum, for *vestro* scelere *causato*. *In*
Lucem bibit, for *usque* ad diem, *verruit* *in* cisternas,
for *sunt* cisternæ *in* ducem crescent, for *usque* or *ingressi*
fieri *possunt* *in* curiam, for *pro* curia, *receptum* *in* fo-
rum, for *intra* forum *vixit* *in* diem, for *non* amplius
die, *In* tempore *venit*, for *opportuno* *modis* *in* mili-
bus ardet, for *inter* mille. *In* numero *hæc* *bonore* *bu-*
bitus, for *honoratus*. *In* manu *stet* *victoria*, for *ad*
libitum.

Sub *recla* *reverso* *farmenta*, for *infra* *testa*, *Sub*
lucem *redierunt*, for *circiter* *lucem*, *sub* *id* *tempus*, for
post *illud*, *sub* *horam* *pugne*, for *ante* *horam*, *sub* *um-*
bram *properat*, for *ad* *umbram*, *sub* *ignem* *missi*, for
capitis.

Sub *adversa* *queru*, for *pone* *quercum* *sub* *terris*
posuere *domus*, for *in* *terris* *sub* *montibus* *Idæ*, for
iuxta *montes*, *sub* *illo* *tempore*, for *eodem*, *sub* *corona*,
for *coronati*, *sub* *deo*, for *sine* *teste*, *sub* *manu*, for *in*
manibus, *sub* *die* *maris*, for *tarda*, *sub* *vinetis* *iacent*,
for *sub* *umbrâ*, for *simulacra*.

-¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ⁷ ⁸ ⁹ ¹⁰ ¹¹ ¹² ¹³ ¹⁴ ¹⁵ ¹⁶ ¹⁷ ¹⁸ ¹⁹ ²⁰ ²¹ ²² ²³ ²⁴ ²⁵ ²⁶ ²⁷ ²⁸ ²⁹ ³⁰ ³¹ ³² ³³ ³⁴ ³⁵ ³⁶ ³⁷ ³⁸ ³⁹ ⁴⁰ ⁴¹ ⁴² ⁴³ ⁴⁴ ⁴⁵ ⁴⁶ ⁴⁷ ⁴⁸ ⁴⁹ ⁵⁰ ⁵¹ ⁵² ⁵³ ⁵⁴ ⁵⁵ ⁵⁶ ⁵⁷ ⁵⁸ ⁵⁹ ⁶⁰ ⁶¹ ⁶² ⁶³ ⁶⁴ ⁶⁵ ⁶⁶ ⁶⁷ ⁶⁸ ⁶⁹ ⁷⁰ ⁷¹ ⁷² ⁷³ ⁷⁴ ⁷⁵ ⁷⁶ ⁷⁷ ⁷⁸ ⁷⁹ ⁸⁰ ⁸¹ ⁸² ⁸³ ⁸⁴ ⁸⁵ ⁸⁶ ⁸⁷ ⁸⁸ ⁸⁹ ⁹⁰ ⁹¹ ⁹² ⁹³ ⁹⁴ ⁹⁵ ⁹⁶ ⁹⁷ ⁹⁸ ⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰ ¹⁰¹ ¹⁰² ¹⁰³ ¹⁰⁴ ¹⁰⁵ ¹⁰⁶ ¹⁰⁷ ¹⁰⁸ ¹⁰⁹ ¹¹⁰ ¹¹¹ ¹¹² ¹¹³ ¹¹⁴ ¹¹⁵ ¹¹⁶ ¹¹⁷ ¹¹⁸ ¹¹⁹ ¹²⁰ ¹²¹ ¹²² ¹²³ ¹²⁴ ¹²⁵ ¹²⁶ ¹²⁷ ¹²⁸ ¹²⁹ ¹³⁰ ¹³¹ ¹³² ¹³³ ¹³⁴ ¹³⁵ ¹³⁶ ¹³⁷ ¹³⁸ ¹³⁹ ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁴¹ ¹⁴² ¹⁴³ ¹⁴⁴ ¹⁴⁵ ¹⁴⁶ ¹⁴⁷ ¹⁴⁸ ¹⁴⁹ ¹⁵⁰ ¹⁵¹ ¹⁵² ¹⁵³ ¹⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁵⁶ ¹⁵⁷ ¹⁵⁸ ¹⁵⁹ ¹⁶⁰ ¹⁶¹ ¹⁶² ¹⁶³ ¹⁶⁴ ¹⁶⁵ ¹⁶⁶ ¹⁶⁷ ¹⁶⁸ ¹⁶⁹ ¹⁷⁰ ¹⁷¹ ¹⁷² ¹⁷³ ¹⁷⁴ ¹⁷⁵ ¹⁷⁶ ¹⁷⁷ ¹⁷⁸ ¹⁷⁹ ¹⁸⁰ ¹⁸¹ ¹⁸² ¹⁸³ ¹⁸⁴ ¹⁸⁵ ¹⁸⁶ ¹⁸⁷ ¹⁸⁸ ¹⁸⁹ ¹⁹⁰ ¹⁹¹ ¹⁹² ¹⁹³ ¹⁹⁴ ¹⁹⁵ ¹⁹⁶ ¹⁹⁷ ¹⁹⁸ ¹⁹⁹ ²⁰⁰ ²⁰¹ ²⁰² ²⁰³ ²⁰⁴ ²⁰⁵ ²⁰⁶ ²⁰⁷ ²⁰⁸ ²⁰⁹ ²¹⁰ ²¹¹ ²¹² ²¹³ ²¹⁴ ²¹⁵ ²¹⁶ ²¹⁷ ²¹⁸ ²¹⁹ ²²⁰ ²²¹ ²²² ²²³ ²²⁴ ²²⁵ ²²⁶ ²²⁷ ²²⁸ ²²⁹ ²³⁰ ²³¹ ²³² ²³³ ²³⁴ ²³⁵ ²³⁶ ²³⁷ ²³⁸ ²³⁹ ²⁴⁰ ²⁴¹ ²⁴² ²⁴³ ²⁴⁴ ²⁴⁵ ²⁴⁶ ²⁴⁷ ²⁴⁸ ²⁴⁹ ²⁵⁰ ²⁵¹ ²⁵² ²⁵³ ²⁵⁴ ²⁵⁵ ²⁵⁶ ²⁵⁷ ²⁵⁸ ²⁵⁹ ²⁶⁰ ²⁶¹ ²⁶² ²⁶³ ²⁶⁴ ²⁶⁵ ²⁶⁶ ²⁶⁷ ²⁶⁸ ²⁶⁹ ²⁷⁰ ²⁷¹ ²⁷² ²⁷³ ²⁷⁴ ²⁷⁵ ²⁷⁶ ²⁷⁷ ²⁷⁸ ²⁷⁹ ²⁸⁰ ²⁸¹ ²⁸² ²⁸³ ²⁸⁴ ²⁸⁵ ²⁸⁶ ²⁸⁷ ²⁸⁸ ²⁸⁹ ²⁹⁰ ²⁹¹ ²⁹² ²⁹³ ²⁹⁴ ²⁹⁵ ²⁹⁶ ²⁹⁷ ²⁹⁸ ²⁹⁹ ³⁰⁰ ³⁰¹ ³⁰² ³⁰³ ³⁰⁴ ³⁰⁵ ³⁰⁶ ³⁰⁷ ³⁰⁸ ³⁰⁹ ³¹⁰ ³¹¹ ³¹² ³¹³ ³¹⁴ ³¹⁵ ³¹⁶ ³¹⁷ ³¹⁸ ³¹⁹ ³²⁰ ³²¹ ³²² ³²³ ³²⁴ ³²⁵ ³²⁶ ³²⁷ ³²⁸ ³²⁹ ³³⁰ ³³¹ ³³² ³³³ ³³⁴ ³³⁵ ³³⁶ ³³⁷ ³³⁸ ³³⁹ ³⁴⁰ ³⁴¹ ³⁴² ³⁴³ ³⁴⁴ ³⁴⁵ ³⁴⁶ ³⁴⁷ ³⁴⁸ ³⁴⁹ ³⁵⁰ ³⁵¹ ³⁵² ³⁵³ ³⁵⁴ ³⁵⁵ ³⁵⁶ ³⁵⁷ ³⁵⁸ ³⁵⁹ ³⁶⁰ ³⁶¹ ³⁶² ³⁶³ ³⁶⁴ ³⁶⁵ ³⁶⁶ ³⁶⁷ ³⁶⁸ ³⁶⁹ ³⁷⁰ ³⁷¹ ³⁷² ³⁷³ ³⁷⁴ ³⁷⁵ ³⁷⁶ ³⁷⁷ ³⁷⁸ ³⁷⁹ ³⁸⁰ ³⁸¹ ³⁸² ³⁸³ ³⁸⁴ ³⁸⁵ ³⁸⁶ ³⁸⁷ ³⁸⁸ ³⁸⁹ ³⁹⁰ ³⁹¹ ³⁹² ³⁹³ ³⁹⁴ ³⁹⁵ ³⁹⁶ ³⁹⁷ ³⁹⁸ ³⁹⁹ ⁴⁰⁰ ⁴⁰¹ ⁴⁰² ⁴⁰³ ⁴⁰⁴ ⁴⁰⁵ ⁴⁰⁶ ⁴⁰⁷ ⁴⁰⁸ ⁴⁰⁹ ⁴¹⁰ ⁴¹¹ ⁴¹² ⁴¹³ ⁴¹⁴ ⁴¹⁵ ⁴¹⁶ ⁴¹⁷ ⁴¹⁸ ⁴¹⁹ ⁴²⁰ ⁴²¹ ⁴²² ⁴²³ ⁴²⁴ ⁴²⁵ ⁴²⁶ ⁴²⁷ ⁴²⁸ ⁴²⁹ ⁴³⁰ ⁴³¹ ⁴³² ⁴³³ ⁴³⁴ ⁴³⁵ ⁴³⁶ ⁴³⁷ ⁴³⁸ ⁴³⁹ ⁴⁴⁰ ⁴⁴¹ ⁴⁴² ⁴⁴³ ⁴⁴⁴ ⁴⁴⁵ ⁴⁴⁶ ⁴⁴⁷ ⁴⁴⁸ ⁴⁴⁹ ⁴⁵⁰ ⁴⁵¹ ⁴⁵² ⁴⁵³ ⁴⁵⁴ ⁴⁵⁵ ⁴⁵⁶ ⁴⁵⁷ ⁴⁵⁸ ⁴⁵⁹ ⁴⁶⁰ ⁴⁶¹ ⁴⁶² ⁴⁶³ ⁴⁶⁴ ⁴⁶⁵ ⁴⁶⁶ ⁴⁶

other Propositions construed with them before their cases, which are therefore supposed to be understood being not expressed, and they are in that respect accounted absolute Adverbs.

25 Quoniam profectione quibusque intersunt casibus.

Roll and dice fecus in xea supra vers. 43. ad. 1004

2. Erga ex micro penis contra prope pone secundum

-Infra: inter circumplexes trans duce quatuor. XI. 245

-abs deus nisi que palam praesentia deo cum fine coram

Abtlo: desilam juper m sub subex mixiguel inu

Quo petit ad, sic usque, procul longe a, prope ubi, atque.

Quisquis populi rursus tenuis, aut pinguis iunior?

Septimo cum, cuique suas proponere causas.

Obviam habet socium prope proprium, dicitur.

...et adde tenuis portum plenumque dualem.

Denique pro causa patrium vult quemlibet ergo

2nd Avenue (7th Avenue) for bus direction

~~CONFIDENTIAL~~

The Prepositionall like the Conjunctive
Verbs have nothing of regence, but are only ler-
nall, yet ~~can~~ as such are very usefull, becaus
without conjunctions, no sentences can have ex-
ther

ther a Consummation in themselves, or a Con-
 tinuation from each to other. And Prepositions af-
 ford much of compendious and various Elegance
 as by apposition instanced already, so by composi-
 tion, as in the following instances: *ab, abs, ab-*

ab, abs (which with the rest next following, are
 separable Prepositions) doe in composition sig-
 nifie either privation, as *amens abpmls abfemine*, or
 separation, *avullus abactus, abftrictus*, or in-
 tention, *abnegatio, abfolutio*. Where *a* is used in
 Latine words only before *m* and *n* but in exoticke
 words before *x* and *z*. *Ab* is used before any vowel
 ell, and before *b, d, f, h, i, l, v, x* seldom before *m*
 and *p* alwayes before *r* and *s*. And for Euphonia
ab is changed into *en* in *abfens* and *enigris*.

Ab is used before *x, q, t*. And both *ab* and *abs*
 all other separable Prepositions have like places in
 Apposition as they have in Composition. *Ad* com-
 pounded doth signifie an increase, *adumatio, ap-
 proach, accessus, assimilatio*. And it is intire in
 Composition with any vowel, or with *b, d, h, m, v*
 except *abbrevians*. But *d* is cut off theore
 before words that begin with *a, g, h, p, r, s, t* leav-
 ing them doubled in recompense of the loss.
 There are excepted *adsumus, adhaere, agnoscere,
 adsum*. Likewise *d* before *q* is changed into *a*
acquiesco. And *q* before *u* is changed into *qu*.

Ante compounded noteth a precedence in time,
 place, or some other condition, *intellectus, ante-
 ambulation, antefere*, and being alwayes intire, it
 goeth before *a, c, e, f, h, i, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, z*
circum referring only unto place being com-
 pounded, is intire before *a, c, e, f, h, i, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, z*
 mostly doth change into *c* before *a, d, f, g, h, i, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v*. But *m* is cut off before *i* as in *circum*. Can

tra compounded doth signifie opposition, as, *contra-*
dictio contraliteor, contradico, or over against contra-
positus, contrastans, contraveniens. And it is every
 where intire, and only before such letters as are
 in the former instances. De compounded noteth
 detraction, *decoior, descent, defluxus, deficiency,*
dedisco. locall motion *deambulo,* or is privative,
delumbis, or active with intension *deamo,* with re-
 mission, *deserveo* or negative, *demens dedecus,* or
 Demonstrative *delatio.* And is found entire be-
 fore all the letters wherewith Latine words begin,
 but seldomest before *q.* and *x.* as *dequestus de-*
quis.

Ex or *ex* compounded signifie privation, *elinguis,*
 or intension *elusus exoratus.* And it is used for ex-
 tra, *exclusus,* moreover *E.* is used before *b. d. g. t. l.*
mon. v. But *Ex* before all vowels and *c. p. q. r.*
 which before *f.* casteth away *x.* recompensed by
 doubling *f.* as *effrenis.* And *f.* after *x.* is cut off
 without recompence, as *exanguis,* in *exspes,* it is
 preserved for a difference from *expes.*

In compounded signifieeth, *non, inutilis, intra, in-*
gressio, contra insubstans, valde, incensus, supra, imminens,
per, inusu, publicus, indicium, locall motion, *importatio.*
 And it is intire before vowels, and *e. d. f. g. b. j. n.*
g. s. t. v. Before *b. m. p.* the letter *n.* is changed in-
 to *m.* *inverbis immortalis impar.* Before *l.* and *r.* it
 is cut off, and the letter following is doubled, as,
illiusus, irrisio. Inter compounded signifyeth middle-
 nes, *interpositio,* privation *interitus,* intension *inter-*
dictum. And it doth remaine intire in composition
 before all letters wherewith Latine words begin,
 except *intelligo,* and such others changing *r.* un-
 to *ro.*

Intro in composition doth keep constantly to the same sense, and is intire before *a. d. e. g. i. m. n. s. o. z.*

Ob compounded doth stand for *parum*, as *oblongus* for *contra* as *obiectum*, for *circa*, as *obfessio*, for *coram*, as *obveniens*. And it is found before all letters for the most part intire, except in *opprobrium*, and *acquiescens*, where *b* is changed to *p*, in the first, and *c* in the last, and such others: but in *omissus* and *opertus* it is cast away.

Post compounded referring only to succession of time place or some other circumstance doth remaine intire, going before words that begin with *a. e. f. g. h. i. l. m. p. q. s. v.*

Per compounded signifieth *valde*, *permodestus*, *periniquus*, or *perfidus*, or *trans perspicuus*, or *minimus pertinax*. And it doth remaine entire before any letter, wherewith Latine words begin, saving in *pelluctus* and *pellucidus*.

Pro in composition doth signifie *ante*, *prolativus*, *super praefectus*, *maxime praclarus*, *propterea*, *propterea*, *propterea*. In some Compounds it doth not alter the sense of the simple words, as in *praeclarus*, *praeclarus*, and it is intire before all letters that begin Latine words.

Proter compounded is constant to the same signification, and doth remaine intire before *a. d. e. f. g. i. l. m. n. p. q. r. v.* which only it will precede, and no other; *proterbians* hath *b* for Euphony.

Pro in composition is used for *ante*, *providus*, or *praecal*, *prophanus*, *prohibitus*, *propudens*, or *super*, *prominens*, or *ultra*, *progressus*, or *palam*, *protulgo*, or *valde*, *procurans*, or *longe*, *protentus*. And it is always intire, and goeth before all letters except *b. c. d.*

Con compounded doth stand for simul, commensalis, for contra, contend, for valde, concutio concupiscit. And it is intire before c. d. f. g. i. n. q. s. t. v. before b. p. and t. n. the letter n. is changed, as in these instances, cumbiba, compares, colligo, commulo, corrigo. And before h. or any vowel, n. is cut off without recompence, Comedo alone hath m. instead of n. for Euphony.

Di or dis compounded stand for non, diffinit, for fearum, discuss, for contra, diffensio, for valde, differeos, for ordinare, dispositio. Moreover Di is used in composition before words that begin with d. g. l. m. n. r. But dis before b. c. i. p. q. s. t. and before f. the same is doubled in recompence of f. cut off as in diffido.

Re in composition is used for retro, recessus, for sursum, recognosce, for recipere, redamo, for adversum, relictor, for valde, redondo, for proci, remotor, for non reclusus. And sometimes it addeth nothing to the signification of the simple, itale. And it is put before b. c. d. f. i. l. m. n. p. q. s. t. v. but before h. and a. e. i. a. u. it will take d. for Euphony. redibeo redactus, redemptus, rediens, redolens, reducus, and reuictor, renno, reedifica without d. In redas for rem, d. is doubled for a recompence of m. cut off, so R. is never impaired.

Se compounded doth note a separation, scilicet privation, securus, socors, deviation seductus. And it cometh in composition before c. d. f. g. i. l. n. p. q. s. t. v. being alwayes intire.

Ue in composition doth signifie intention, diminution, vigrandis, vitors, privation vefans, vicius. And it goeth before c. d. f. g. i. l. n. p. q. s. t. v. being every where entire, vens for v. and v. for v. in the Latin. All which have the same signification with their Latin.

Annotations.

Some Prepositions will not be compounded at all, as, *absque adversum apud circiter extra coram erga intra iuxta penes, pone, secundum, sine, ultra,* being allwayes separable.

Others have Compounds but very few, as, *quercum circum circa, cisalpinus, cispadanus, perclam mecum, quibuscum, extraordinarius, extrinsecus, inframurus propalam, prope modum, propterea, prater, propter, supradidus, bassenus, quadantenus quatuor quinquaversum retrosum, usque, quoque.*

Many are found separable from their cases, becoming absolute Adverbs, some commonly, as *ante, circa, circum, circiter, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, iuxta, palam, pone, post, procul, prope, secus, super, super, supra, ultra,* some very seldom, as *pro, propter* and *tenus* thus: (having much affinity with Pronouns) Adverbials will admit of diverse forms in diverse structures.

Of the figure of Adverbs.

Adverbially the figure are some Primitives being many Monosyllables, as *nunc, mox, jam, cras, sed, vel, proclam, ad, per, &c.* And others Derivatives, which may be Pronominall Monosyllables, for they descend from any part of speech, and from Nouns or Pronouns in any case, as *quod, recens, peritus, facile, notius, plurimum, asperba, horrida,* in the Nominative or Accusative, *humi, domi, nanci,* in the Genitive, *campi, luci, vesperi,* in the Accusative, *hac, forte, repente, subito, recte, noctu, hodie,* in the Ablativall. All which have the same both termination and signification with their Primitives.

cives. Others differing in Termination from their Primitives being of the first or of the second Declension will end in *atim* *itus* *iter* *itimim*, or *e*. as *summatus*, *medullitus*, *ostiatim*, *humanitus*, *humaniter*, *vititum*, *enixim*, *casim*, *rapim*, *male*. Being of the third, they end in *atim* *enter* *tim* *terno*, as *generalim*, *vehementer*, *partim*, *seguiter*, *omnino*.

Derivatives by comparison follow the rules of other Adjectives, being the same with Adjectives neutrall, as *minus*, *minimum*, or Superlatives may end in *e*, or *o*. *novissime*, *postremo*, both Comparatives and Superlatives may be derived from Prepositions *pro* *prout*, *primo*, so *extra* *exterius*, *extreme*, *infra*, *inferius*, *infime*, &c.

Of Compound Adverbs.

Adverbs are compounded some like Pronouns with syllabical additions, as *tandem*, *ubinam*, *usquam*, *paulisper*, *hicce*, *hiccine*. Some with precedent Substantives, *dextrorsum*, *pedetentim*. Some with subsequent Substantives, *tantopore illico perendie*, *sepenumero*.

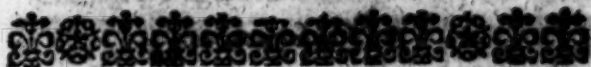
Some with subsequent Adjectives, *denuo proutera*. Some with subsequent Verbs, *Ubiuis quolibet*. Some with two Verbs, *scilicet videlicet*, Some with two Adverbs, *tantummodo velut protinus dein*. Some with three originalls, *deinde aliquantisper quamobrem, undiusertius*.

Primitives being of the sort of the word De-
 clension will end in some of the letters of the
 alphabet, as a, e, i, o, u, y, &c. being
 of the kind they end in some of the letters of
 the alphabet, as a, e, i, o, u, y, &c. being
 Derivatives by composition follow the rules of
 other Adjectives being the same with Adjectives
 generally, as minus, minusculus, or superlatives may
 end in a, e, i, o, u, y, &c. both Comparatives
 and Superlatives may be derived from Prepo-
 sitions by being put in, to extra, extra, extra, &c.

Of Compound Adjectives.

Adjectives are compounded some like Particles
 with Syllables additions, as candidus, candidus, &c.
 and some like Particles, some with Prepositions
 Substantives, Adjectives, &c. as candidus, candidus, &c.
 Substantive Substantives, &c. as candidus, candidus, &c.

Some with Substantive Adjectives, as candidus, candidus, &c.
 and some with Substantive Verbs, as candidus, candidus, &c.
 Some with two Verbs, as candidus, candidus, &c.
 with two Adjectives, as candidus, candidus, &c.
 Some with three originals, as candidus, candidus, &c.



THE TRUE REASON OF A RIGHT SYNTAX.

THE Syntax is a congruous and orderly disposal of all the parts of Speech; requiring with congruity of words a meet placing of the same in Prose or Poema. And it is two fold, Analogicall in the simple and common way of Construction; or Anomalous, when departing thence, it hath for Authority the constant practice of approved elucick writers. And this last doth figure either the Construction of simple sentences; or the elocution of the whole speech.

Of Analogicall Construction.

The Analogicall Construction is two fold, by Concordance, or by Consequence.

Of Concordance.

By Concordance a Substantive or any part of Speech put Substantively having a regent power will require any Noun or Verb depending thereon to agree therewith in its proper affection. *Thi capitale nefas operosa diluit arte vir nequam.*

Of Consequence.

It was a common error generally received, that every oblique did belong to a certaine regence of some particular part of Speech, which mistake hath multiplyed Rules, and thereby stunn'd all young Students without cause; for the structure of oblique Substantives (which are no Appositions) do not depend upon the regence of any part of Speech, but upon a consequence, or in pursuance of a certtine sense and meaning of the precedent leading word, what part of Speech soever it be, as in that respect indifferent to the structure of any oblique. Wherefore either Verb, or Noun, or Adverb, standing for a guide, as it sheweth in the same signification, so it will be joyned to the same oblique, in construction, as *Hofibus actum*, or *obis*, or *obis*, it is sometimes severall oblique Substantives referring to the same leader for limitations of severall circumstances make with it one predicat answering to a rect Substantive precedent, as to the Subject. *Sponsa domi traxit ante manu sibi detrahit ostium.*

Of Anomalous Constructions.

The Anomalous construction is made by six figures altering the ordinary Syntax of words, to wit, by Enallage, Hypallage, Ellipsis, Pleonasmus, Zeugma, and Syllepsis, whereof the two last belong only unto Concordance, the fourth only so a Consequence, and the three first may concerne either of both.

Enallage

Enallage is a figure that changeth parts of Speech and their affections each with another, whereof before in the Etymologie. **Hypallage** doth transfere Substantives or Adjectives, being the same, or different Cases; and sometimes different Genders having some mutuall dependance amongst themselves each to the others place, as *Pectus quoque robora firmat*, where *Robora* the last of both rectis doth stand for regent, and *pectus* put in Apposition thereto is taken collectively for all parts of the Breast. So *Amantium in amoris est radiatigatio*, where *id* may be Elliptically understood with *in* a Genitive Singular, else, as a rect of a Noone plurall only it may be apposed to the regent Singular. Likewise *preclara virtutis bona*, for *preclara virtute*. *Adi facra fames*, for *sacri*. *Solstitium peccati defende*, for *Solstitio defende peccat*, *date classes nostras*, for *classes nostras*. *In nova ferre animas munit dicere formas*, for *corpora in novas formas mutatas*. Ellipsis doth figurate the construction, when some word that is very obvious, but wanting, must be supplied, having common instances in most Rules.

Eleonasmus is a redundance of words, where some may be spared, were it not of purpose to make the sentence more remarkable, as *abstinet a Pina, pridie eius diei*, or *calendarum, ubi gentium quo terra tum abili, nusquam loci invenitur tua solus culpa est hisce oculis oporuit vidi meis auribus audire, seare letentur, vitam vixit improbam, morte ibiq; repentina rebus gaudens fecundis letantibus, berbe sub se facere solet*.

Zenobia doth figurate the concordance, when a Verb or Adjective agreeing with the nearest regent Substantive, is to be supplied in a congruous bond. *Caesaris milia, illius in animo totos dies* number

number, person, case, and gender, with all other
 regents having respect thereto, whether see before
 or after without any Copulatives or with them, as
Ego de patre, Tu de liberis, Amicus de Rollo, perdonatus
fratrum, Securus in classe velis, et c.
 After Adverbs of exception or comparison, the
 Verb or Adjective will best agree with the remotest
 regent, as *Cuiusmodi nisi muliercula indignatus esset.*
 Verbs or Adjectives be placed with a regent
 Nouns of multitude, having parts that follow
 either with it may be supplied, or is the same be
 placed with any part being understood with the rest
 when it is called Prolepsis, as *Populus, Arvis, agris*
per agrum deserti, alio Implicite, ageris, nudus, ut ager
is, where the Distributive interger must be re-
solved to the parts, Mars, nudus, Rodericus, being
an implicite Prolepsis.
 Synthesis doth affect the concordance, when many
 regents copulated whereof some or all be singular
 shall govern a Verb or Adjective plurall agreeing
 with the worthier regent in Person or Gender, the
 first of both being worthier, and the second next
 in dignity, as *Tu, Corvix, et alii, vultus, et c.*
Simul, fides, et omnia, moribus, et c.
 So the Preposition *cum* with the Ablative case
 both often take the place of *et*, and copulative,
fratrum, et c. But in prose the Verbs or Adjectives would
 best agree with rest, being seldom altered by the
 oblique, except it be with Poets, and that best if
 if the oblique be a Pronoun, as *Dirigimur inde*
lobitum, et c. In things without life the
 neuter commonly passeth for the worthiest Gender
Divitia, Decus, honor, omnia in oculis sua sunt. And
 sometimes

Sometimes in living things, *Judaei suum leporem ad cygnum gustare volunt, quæ namque aliis lucti gratia*: Sometimes when the Copulated regents coincide in the same Gender, the Adjective doth agree with them. *Grammatica olim & Musica inuicta sunt*. Sometimes the copulated being adjuncts of men, whatsoever their own Gender be, will admit of adjectives Masculine. *Inuentus præcipueque manipula morigeri sunt*, which is a Metonymie.

Many Adjectives Singular copulated may agree with a Substantive plurall: *Magna minorque Jeta, Colores albus, ater & viridis in Trade spectantur*, which are an implicite Prolepsis.

Lastly, if diuers regents are included in a Collective or Distributive, which may be resolved to *hic & ille, alter & alter*, being equivalent with a Copulare, and the Verb or Adjective doth agree with them only in signification, not in their proper affections of Number and Gender, then it is called of late Writers *Synthesis*. *Tora gens in fessis armati, uerque deluduntur, Terra Titania proles fulmine delecti*, for *Titanes, hoc pecus ante meum mille quoque montibus errant*, where *Oves* or *Capra*, a specificall kind must be supplied from the generall word *pecus*. *Servitia repudiavit qui cateruam concurrant*, by a Metonymy of the adjunct. *Latium & Capua multati sunt agro*, for *Latini & Capuenses*, by a Metonymia of the Continent. *Vix Calliope placidas præbere Comenti*, for *Muse quarum ipsa dux erat*, by a Synecdoche of the Species. *Capita conuersionis crucibus affixi*, by a Metaphor. Other examples passe under the name of *Synthesis*, where some known Appellatives are understood figuratively, as *plus quam duo milia cessi*, where *homines* should

should be supplied, *Rex tibi precipimus*, for *Ego cum Proceribus, nobis presente*, for *Præside cum Assessoribus*. Other instances having no equivalence with a Copulate, cannot be a structure by Synthesis, but by plaine Ellipsis, as in *Eunucho sua*, where must be supplied *Comædia*, *Præste sub ipsa*, supply *urbe*, *Centauro, in magna*, supply *Navi*.

The Concordance of continued Substantives.

A regent Substantive will require any other Substantives in a continued signification commonly called *Apposition*, be they few or many to agree with it selfe alwayes in person, and regularly in Case and Number, as *Authorem perdis scelerum origo & fomes, otium, satis authoribus istæ tot mala contingunt*: where the latter continued Substantives declare the nature of the former; sometimes by adding property, as in the former instances, sometimes by clearing an ambiguity, as *Leo fides celeste*, sometimes by restraining generality, as *Ludi Confusalia*.

The apposed figuratively may be a Genitive with a regent of any other case by *Antiphrasis*, as *Urbs Antiochiæ*, for *Antiochia*, *transit flumen Rheni*, for *Rhenum*: And it must be a Genitive, with a regent possessive standing for the same Case of the Primitive by *Emallage*, as *Tuum oculis testis indicium elevari nequit*, for *Tui indicium*.

Likewise the apposed may be of a different number, which being plurall only, will agree with a regent singular, as, *Ego ut delitæ*. And contrariwise, *Parisi Metropolis*, or being a regular Noun plurall may agree with a regent collective singular, as *Senatus patris prædones*. And contrariwise, *Sanæ pecus ignavum fuit*. Or with many Regenta singular copulated, *Philippus & Maria Re-*

qas Angliz. And contrarywise, Servitia familiam cum famula vili acquisivit.

Lastly, the apposed being moveable Substantives must accord in Gender with the regent, *Ensis viator, hasta vel ferrum viatrix*, the Neuter agreeing best with feminines of nouns unmovable to the neuter. A Nominative after an Indicative or the Accusative standing, instead thereof after an Infinitive of Verbs Substantive, having the nature of definitions, are apposed to their defined regents in a continued signification; for no word can be governed of any more then one regent in the same respect, as, *Honor est virtutis calcar, nuptiæ dignoscuntur bonissior conditio quam incundior, Musæ habentur, literatissima Cohors. Ego salutor matris deliciæ. Ars vocatur inopum divitiæ laudibus arguitur vini Bacchator. Homerus. Vos malleam amicos esse quam haberi. Circenses curule certamen vocari constat*, where the verbs Substantive do constantly accord with regents, but Participles signifying to be esteemed, or called, or a Relative, ioyned with other Moods reduced thence, may indifferently accord either with the regent or with the apposed Substantive, *Passim clarescit Lutetia vocata, or vocati Parisii quæ vocatur, or qui vocantur Parisii, quam, or quos vocant Parisios*. And if both be Appellatives that betoken things inanimate, then such Participles do commonly accord with the apposed, *Paupertas visum est onus, omnis error non est habenda stultitia*. And they constantly agree with the apposed, when both referre to Men. *Opibus congerendis student Gens universa, dicti Veneres, or, quos vocant veneres, Proles Aeneia condidit Alham, qui fertur Julius, or by variation, Cui nomen Julius, or Juli, or Julium*. Likewise such being apposed, require a concordance of any Ad-

jective following, *Palmita belli Scipiadæ cast.* Lastly, an Appellative appoled to a proper name will require the regence. *Apollæ Latinum opidum captum est, Biblia sacer episcopi affluere evolvendus.*
 300 Moreover Datives construed with, *uobis, dato, datum, tibi licet, excedit æquum necesse opus est,* and such other as they take the place of Accusatives before the Infinitives of Verbs Substantive or passive of esteem or calling, so they admit the Appositions following the said Infinitives to be either Datives or Accusatives answerable to the Accusatives to be supplied from thence. *Doribus bonis ex ipso sanctoque videri, æquum est piis conferri immonis, non datur vobis haberi civibus, or vobis, mihi nec tibi nec licet esse negligentem,* or negligentem; where *vos* from *vobis*, and *me* from *mibi*, should be supplied with *cives* and *negligentem*.

20137 The Concordance of Adjectives.

300 Adjectives whether Nouns, Pronouns or Participles agree with their Substantives, being of the same sentence with them, in Person, Case, Gender, and Number: *vos omnes habuistis infidi,* but a Pronoun Relative being of another sentence, may be of another Case, then the Antecedent Substantive, which is to be supplied therewith. *Existat quæ nulla foret involvere Nubes, for quam aliam,* and any Participle wherein a Relative is included must have the antecedent substantive supplied. *Equum in Superi, tenuit mora nulla vocator, Supply, Superos,* and sometimes to avoid ambiguity, the Substantive is repeated with a Relative to clear the sense. *Latus est virtutis merces quam mercedem æquissimam modo æpetunt,* and the Substantive is oft repeated without necessity, *diem scire esse nullum quo die propter non agam.* Sometimes the regent Substan-

Substantive is transferred from the principal sentence and made the same Case with the Relative changed to a Demonstrative by antiphrasis. *Quamvis ad domum vestram erit.* And a Relative plural construed with a partitive Singular, may be changed from the Genitive, and made the same Case with it. *Nubium status variis quibus utrumquidem in idem peritum inluxit, et ipse alius eas finit alius pervenit,* being Prolepsis. Sometimes the Relative is put in the Antecedent Case Greekwise, *aliquid enim scribo quoniam non que consumissis.* Sometimes the preceding Verb is to be supplied where with *Legem edicito quomodo tibi videtur,* supply *ediculam* *esse*.

Sometimes *qui* is used for *quolis*, and being plural, referring to an Antecedent Singular, the antecedent must be understood specifically, not individually. *Emulorum deperit quibus Regine munus utitur.* *Qualis et quantus* being Relatives agree alwayes with the latter Substantive. *Tales viros esse putas, qualis femina.* *Tanta quid sitis, quanto opes.* And such Relatives may be changed unto Adjectives with Comparative Adverbs, *tam* and *quam*, as *tam optimum oleum quod acerbissimum sit oleum,* for *tale oleum, quod oleum, Sol minus, quantum solis, Sol tam magnus quod solis.*

Adjectives used Adverbially are englisht after Verba Active or Neuter, beokening quality, time, or posture. And answering to a precedent regent Substantive. *Oxoniam petit libens et frequenter,* for *libenter et frequenter.* *Opulenter nos invitavit inhere,* for *invito, saltem subius, ubi emulorum innotuit, innotuit rectum, domum suprema.*

Distributives being plural only are properly joyned with regents that want the singular. *Singuli proceres, binastri, ternastri, Pronomes, pos-*

itive have much affinity with Substantives, for as regents they require a concordance of finit Verbi in person and number, and of Adiectives in Case, Gender, Person and Number. *Nullus superum spernetur inultus*, supply with *Superum numero*, or *consortio*, where the principall regent being the Genitive plurall doth allwayes leave an impresse of its owne person and Gender in the particitive.

The particitive being a Superlative placed between two Substantives of a continued signification may agree with either of them, but more properly with the regent. *Inedia frangitur Leo ammalium fortissimus*, or *fortissimum*, or *Animal fortissimum*, being then indefinite.

The Genitive of the principall regent after Superlatives may be changed to the Accusative with *ante*, *Rosa ante alios flores suavissimus*, or to the Accusative with *inter*, or to the Ablative with *e. de. ex.* after any particitive, *Natus maximus vestrum inter vos e.* or *de vobis*, *Manuum*, or *e manibus*, or *inter manus dextra est fortior*, *Zonarum*, *de Zonis*, or *inter Zonas media*. *Hoc operum mihi crede tuorum*, or *ex operibus*, or *inter opera*. *Ego fratrum*, or *e fratribus* *superstes*, *nigra Lanarum coloribus inepta*, *Crasus divitum*, *unus salus*, or such like being Allipticall. Other instances are *Gracilimes*, *Degeneres canum*, *improbi hominum*, *Sociorum opportuni*, *acer equorum*, used for Superlatives.

The Partitive Superlatives may refer to diverse or contrary kinds, *Sic ego sum rerum non ultima Sese tuarum rerum omnium mors est extremum*, *bona existimatio est omnium prima*, *bonum est malorum optimus*, *bonorum pessimus*. And sometimes the regent is repeated with the Partitive, as the Antecedent

dent with the Relative, *Oculorum dexter oculus co-*
own. Lastly, the principall regent may be a Gen-
nitive singular being a Collective, *Pampai sangu-*
nis unus, furventius pessimus.

The same Pronouns desisting to be Participles
agree with their Substantives, in all four affections
like other Adjectives, *Unus hostis, alter amicus*
est, utruaque (po)nis. Substantives Greek wise are used for Adjectives
being no appositions, *Dat. marem strepitum,* for
masculum, habet heros sensus, amat succos, socos, Ro-
mula tellus. Quam populum, laet regem, cognovit
mus.

Any Adjective Neutrall in either of both num-
bers, may be put Substantively, *quiddam, negotium*
verbum, or *Chroma* being understood, *varium &*
mutabile semper famina, and such may be Substan-
tives to any other Adjectives, as *mala sunt ferenda,*
but more commonly the Pronouns, *Omne rarum*
charum pausa his similia, and such may be under-
stood with Participles that forme the Preter tense
of the Infinitive, *noceat esse locutum,* supply, *id.*
Lastly Pronouns of quantity being Neuters Sin-
gular, are usually construed with a Genitive of any
Substantive, wherewith otherwise they should ac-
cord in all proper affections thereof like other Ad-
jectives, *Minus tristitia, extremum luctus, dimidium,*
or duplum pecunie, plus doloris id noctis, &c. for
minor tristitia, &c. And such a Genitive is some-
times Plurall, not only of Nounes that want the
Singular, as *istud divitiarum,* but also of the regu-
lar, after Partitives, as *tantum nummarum.* Other
examples imitating the same structure be *Orzi-*
cismes, Opaca locorum, amara curarum, cuncta
rum, abduarum, ardua montium, Lubrica vallium.

And such are these Genitives singular standing for Collectives. *Telluris opera, belli acuta, fama incerta, fortuna incerta.* But *omnia sunt hominum rebus pendencia filo*, for *humana omnia*, is Enallage.

Any word taken Technically will be an *Aptote*, and may be either put in Apposition with another Substantive, as *Lactea nomen habet*, or stand for a Substantive to an Adjective. *Istud Anticomarita.* So may Verbs stand for *Aptote* Substantives in the Indicative, *non habemus salem quod in re est*, In the Subjunctive *equum est ut suum cuique reddas*, In the Infinitive: *suadere molestum est*. Likewise Adverbs are used for *Aptote* Substantives. *Nuper prateritum, nunc futurum, nunc tantummodo nostrum est.* But Adverbs of quantity standing for Partitives with a Genitive plural, leave the concordance of Adjectives in Gender and Number to the Genitive being the principall regent, as due thereto from themselves if they were variable, *partim signorum creta sunt, bombardarum displota, plusquam quinquaginta militum occisi*, for *quedam signa nonnulla bombardae quinquaginta milites*, by Enallage. Lastly, two *Aptotes* singular, as a Copulative require an Adjective plural, *frigere & calore sunt contraria*.

Some Adjectives are set alone, the common Substantive being understood. *Pescitur bubula*, supply *carne*, *Labitur terrilona*, supply *sebris*, *perfunditur calida*, supply *agua*, *aris centens*, supply *Nummi*, *scribitur in duo decim*, supply *Tabulae*, *venit ex Tusculano*, supply *agro*, *docet rogatum*, supply *consultum*. Pronominall and Participiall Adjectives do usually accord with a Genitive of the Primitive understood in the possessive, by Enallage of the form and Figure. And likewise the Relatives have often the same concordance with the former

*Accomodatissimum stomacho est hoc caprium quo fronde
desuntur, nec nil refert qui sum innoxius, sua ipsius
laude quantum erat, or sua ipsorum laude quantum
est unus, or salus culpa nostra duorum, or pauco-
rum sententia quot quot adsumus, damnatur, vestra cu-
iusque plerum, or omnium spes quata fuit, tota ca-
cidit, tunc tua defuncti molliter ossa cubent, nostros vi-
disti flentis ocellas, by Enallage of Figure and Num-
ber. And if a Participle doth precede, the pos-
sessive should not follow but the Primitive, as ma-
ternæ lugentis lachryma, or lugentis matris lachryma
id suaserunt.*

The Concordance of Verbs Personall with Refts.

A Verb Personall doth agree with a regent No-
minative, in Number and Person, as, *Nemo semper
sapit.* And whereas some Tense in the Passive and
Deponent voices, be formed by the Participle,
The same must likewise accord with the Reft, in
Case, Gender, Number and Person, as other Ad-
jectives, *Litteræ alibi honorandæ nobiscum illiberati-
ter aspernatæ sunt.* In such grecisms, as, *Hæc
errata condonabitur.* Nounes that seem to be the
Refts are plaine Accusatives thus to be made en-
tire, *Quantum ad hæc errata condonabitur.* Any
part of speech by Enallage may be made an Apos-
trophe, and as the Substantive to an Adjective, so likewise
the Nominative to a Verb Personall, being com-
monly singular, as afore said. But Adverbs col-
lective or partitive construed with Genitives plu-
rall will govern Verbs plurall, as, *Abundè fabula-
rum historiarum admixtæ sunt,* for *fabule quam pluri-
time*

rimæ. Testium partim sunt oculati, partim auriti, for quidam testes. And the Verbs are alwayes plural when the principall regents betoken living things. Else if they signifie things inanimate, ioyned with Adverbs or Pronouns partitive, they will admit a Verb singular, as *plurimum*, or *satis leporum & facetiarum omni sermone fufum est.* Of two Rects singular copulated, or one Collective singular coming before a Verb or Adiective plurall in *Syllepsis* and *Synibesis.* And of Verbs or Adiectives agreeing with the nearest Rects or Substantives, whether of divers, or of the same kindes, as parts of the whole in *Zeugma* and *Prolepsis.* The Rect being the first or second person singular or plurall is never expressed, but to notifie some distinct property, either in a common Act or passion resoluble to Pronouns of diversity, or to Conjunctions exceptive, both with Negatives. *Quod ego in laude pono tu vertis vitio, for alter nullus, nos seria querimus vos ludo indulgetis, for præterea nulli, or nemo nisi vos, or præter vos ipsos.* Or in a singular Act or passion resoluble to a Pronoun demonstrative or individuall, or to a Superlative Adverb absolute or Prepositionall, *Nos colamur Domini Servi sordescitis ipsi, for nos soli, or unici, so vos præcipue, or præ alijs.* Otherwise the first and second person in both numbers are alwayes understood. *Quid facis ignoro, nescimus in vestitus, discite iustitiam moniti.*

Likewise a Rect of the third person being a Relative, except *qui*, is understood after Adverbs conjunctive or disjunctive, or a Negative in place thereof. *Nivada lucet, ac splendet, friget vero, non calet.* Sometimes the conjunctive Adverb is not expressed, but may be supplied by a resolution of the

the

the Sentence. *Vox faucibus elapsa, reverti nequit, or si vox faucibus elaberetur, nequit Reverti. Quas tibi do literas, raro displicent,* is a figurative structure by *Antiphrasis*.

The Relative *Qui* must necessarily be supplied with any Vocative after obliques of the second person, or any possessives derived thence to make the Syntax intire and perfect. *Vestra Judices sententia stabit,* for *qui estis Judices*; and by variation, *vestra Judicum sententia stabit,* or *vestra Judiciaria sententia. Te pater obsecro,* for *qui es pater*, or by variation, *te patrem oro*, resolvable in the same manner to *qui es pater*, but not by necessity, as in the former, that being *Ellipticall*, this a perfect structure. Rects that betoken men are commonly understood, specially with *est, fertur, ferunt, dicunt, aiunt, predicant, clamitant, tradunt, prohibent,* and such others.

The Rects are likewise understood with Verbs of exempt power instanced in their *Etymologie*, *Saxa pluunt*, signifying the Stones drop or sweat, is a Regular sentence, but *saxa pluit*, the Cloud doth shower Haile, is *Ellipticall*, where *Nubes* should be supplied. The Verb Substantive is commonly understood, as, *quot homines, tot sententia, rari quippe boni, mirum, immane, quantus quantus, &c.*

Sometime a Verb Adjective is understood. *Ego continuo mecum,* supply *cogitabam, recte tu quidem & vere* supply *loqueris*, which is familiar in Dialogues.

Such Verbs are likewise understood in Proverbs *Sus Minervam*, supply *docet, Cantharus pillulam,* supply *sapit.*

By the Figure *Apoliopesis*, Verbs are omitted, having sometimes a known sense of indignation. *Quos*

Quot ego, supply *puum*, or of derision, *Tunc illam cumando*, supply *antecellat*. Sometimes a concealed sense either of obscenelle. *Tu autem sed Hircum oles*, or of some other odiousness, *Novimus & qui te*, supply *viderunt*. And of other imperfect sentences accompanying Interjectionall Adverbs, it hath been spoken already in their *Etymology*.

Lastly Genitives of some proper passion or affection ioyned with Accusatives of the person, being construed with the Verbs Impersonall, *paenitet*, *caedet*, *miseret*, *puet*, *piget*, seem to take the place of Nominatives by *Antiphrasi*, as, *avaros impendii caedet*, for *Impendium*, else some Pronounce Demonstrative is to be supplied, with such as *id*, or *tantum impendii caedet*. And the same will fitly answer to the Question what, a Characteristicall note of Rects to Verbs and Substantive to Adjectives. And moreover such Genitives may be changed to Infinitives, the usuall Rects of all Impersonalls, as *tantum laboris nos nil paenitet*, or *Nos nil paenituit tantum tolerasse laborem*. In like manner is used *Platonis mihi in mentem venit*, supply, *dictum*, *Croissus refert*, supply *bonum*.

Of Construction by consequence in Generall.

The Genitive is construed alwayes with a former Substantive, and if it be not expressed, it must be supplied by *Ellipsis*; The Acquisitive may be construed with any part of speech, having a sense suitable thereunto. But the guid or leading word is Ellipticall being a Substantive with two Datives after a Verb Substantive, or an Adjective with

with a Gerundivall Dative, whereof in their proper places, Ablativals with many Accusatives are usually construed with Prepositions, which if they be not expresse, are alwaies to bee supplied with any Ablativals and with all Accusatives, being no sufferers.

All the Obliques being Ellipticall are likewise called Synecdochicall Cases, because they usually note that part wherein some proper or affection doth reside, whereof particular is given in the particular Syntax of every Case.

Prepositions in the Compounds do often refer to their proper Cases, *Oppido abitur transit Rhenum*, which are Sometimes repeated with their Cases; *Ad consilium accersuntur Jurisperiti cum legibus collaturi*. And sometimes they are transferred from Compounds to their Cases, by the figure *Timesis*, *sub amplexus ibit amica tuos*, for *subibit*. Moreover *ex* and *præ* in Compounds, have the force of *extra* and *præter*, *egreditur urbem*, *excedit modum*, *prævertitur Hebrum*.

Derivatives are construed with the same Obliques, as their Primitives, when they continue the same sense, not swerving thence. *Epulum salustio-
tis commodule apparatur*, or *sat comoda*, or *quæ sat
comodat*, *optimus*, or *Optime amicum dicit*, *reliquis
melior aut melius audit*, *propior*, aut *propius*, aut
proxime nobis aut a nobis, aut *nos*, aut *ad nos sedet*;
whereof before in Adverbes, so *Justitia est legibus
obtemperatio*, *nil tibi hanc rem curatio est*, *domum re-
ditionis spe sublata*, *Catonis de hac causa sententia do-
cretum aut opinio stabit*, *Tuum hominis probi pollicis
perspexi*.

Some Nounes in the same signification have sundry constructions, as *pater mihi*, or *mei*, or *meus*, *doctissimus omnium*, or *anie*, or *inter omnes*, or *ex omnibus poeta dignus avis*, or *avorum*, *vacuus ira*, or *ira*, or *ab ira*, *sumus pares aut equales nobis*, or *inter nos*, *stercus agro vel ad agrum utile*, *Murus triginta pedibus*, *pedes*, or *pedum longus*. Some Nounes admit of various structures, but in various senses. *Aer est omnium commune*, where the Guide is put Substantively; or *omnibus communis*, where it is put Adjectively with relation; or *communis inter omnes*, or *nobis cum omnibus aliis*: by vertue of *Con* most familiarly used in composition to this last structure. In like sort *Regum secundus*, the Guide being Partitive, *secundus Regi*, or a *Rege*, being an Adjective of Diversity; So *furti admissio idem est ac ipsum furtum*, the Guide being construed with a Copulative: or *idem furto*, as an Adjective of likeness; or *idem cum furto*, in a Comparative sense: So *vir consilii alienus*, for *expers*, *ambitioni alienus*, for *inhabilis*, *maiestate alienus*, for *vacuus*, *vir gravis paci*, for *molestus*, *gravis auctoritate*, for *potens*, *similis tui*; referring to internall qualities, *similis tibi*, referring to externall parts. Some Verbes also in the same sense admit of divers structures, as *dono impertio aspergo interno induo exuo prohibeo interdico*, and such others are construed with Accusatives of the Person, and Ablatives of the thing, or Accusatives of the thing, and Acquisitives of the Person: *dono te munere*, or *tibi munus*, &c. Others are construed with an Acquisitive or an Accusative, *grasso antecedo antecoo antesto attendo illudo insulto tibi*, or *te*, &c. So *libido nobis*, or *nos incessit*, *morti*, or *morsem occubuit*, *testo*, or *testum sub*

lit, eloquentiæ, or ad eloquentiam hoc conducit. Others are construed with Acquisitives, or Ablativals, *consentio tibi*, or *tecum*, *dissentio tibi*, or *a te*, *acquiesco sententiæ*, or *sententia*. Others with other Cases, *loquor tibi*, or *ad te*, *admoneris errati*, or *erratum*, or *de errato*, *comparamur aliis*, or *cum aliis*, or *ad alios*, or *inter alios*, *interest vestrum Judicium*, or *vestra Judices*, *superfedeas exemplorum multitudini*, or *multitudine*, or *multitudinem*. Others are construed with Acquisitives of the Person, or Accusatives of the Thing, *medicor tibi morbo*, or *tuum morbum*, *condono peccanti*, or *peccatum*, or *condono te peccatum*. *Tempero, moderor*, with such other, having Rectes of the Adiunct are construed with the Acquisitive, but having Rectes of the Subject are construed with the Accusative. *Officium moderatur nostro consilio*, but *nos moderamur consilium officio non ex libidine*, *Pudor temperat nostræ orationi*, or *nos temperamus orationem pudore*.

Most Verbes with change of significations will vary in their Constructions: *Accedo tibi*, for *assentior te accedo*, for *adeo*, *abhorruit scelus*, for *odit perpetratum*, *abhorruit a scelere*, for *devitavit perpetrandum*, *ausculto tibi*, for *obedio ausculto te*, for *audio emulor te*, for *imitor emulor vobiscum*, for *certo*, *emulor maiorum felicitati*, for *invideo*, *Caveo tibi*, for *provideo*, *caveo te*, for *fugio, coveo a te*, for *metuo*, *Caveo pignore*, for *securum facio*, *consulo tibi*, for *prospicio*, *consulo te*, for *consilium peto*, *consulo in Commune*, for *statuo*, *de commodis consulo*, for *moneo*; and *sumatores consulunt* put absolutely, *contingit mihi*, for *accidit*, *contingo te*, for *ango*, *doleo tuam vicem*, or *de tuis rebus adversis*, or *ob res adversas*, but *dolet mihi caput*, the Verbe referring transitively, to others

others miseries, but Intransitively to our owne.

“Do litteras tibi ut nuncio, do ad te ut amicum,
 “focius deficit mihi, *for* deest, deficit me, *for* desti-
 “tuit, deficit a me, *for* desciscit, deficit ab adiu-
 “tore, *for* diffidet, deficit in hostem, *for* mutatur,
 “alimento deficit herba, *for* caret, fenerator pe-
 “cuniam tibi Sc.usuram datur, *or* abs te Sc.usuram
 “recepturo, ira indulget, *for* non obstat, iram in-
 “dulget, *for* fovet, formido metuo timeo vobis,
 “*or* de vobis ut amicis, formido vos ut hostes, *or* a
 “vobis ut hostibus, impono tibi prestigiis ut vere-
 “rator, impono te humeris ut Baiulus, prospicio la-
 “luti Sc.tuendæ, prospicio periculum Sc.futurum, in-
 “me recipio, *for* promitto, me domum recipio, *for*
 “confero, me stupentem recipio, *for* ad me redeo,
 “refero tibi ut noscas, refero ad te ut decernas, re-
 “fero tuos mores, *for* imitor, nostra refert, *for* ad
 “nos spectat, officio renunciat, *for* discedit, Prato-
 “rem renuncio, *for* promulgo, vacat studiis, *for*
 “operam dat, ad ineptias vacat, *for* oriatur, culpa
 “vacat, *for* caret. And many others whereof be-
 fore in the redundant formes of Verbs.

The Construction of Genitives Regular or Ellipticall.

The Genitive is alwayes construed with ano-
 ther Substantive, which if it be expressed hath a
 Genitive in some sorte a cause thereof. But if it be
 understood, being usuall after Adiectivall Nouns
 or Verbs of passion, then the Genitive doth de-
 note the cause of such affection, *Ratione*, or *Cause*,
 being to be supplied therewith, as the former
 Substantive

Substantive. And some Genitives of Nounes that betoken a specificall place or time, have a more Generall known Appellative understood therewith, whereof particular instances were given before in the properties of that Case.

A Genitive of the person or thing construed with a Rect or oblique, may be changed to a Dative, but more properly a Genitive of the person, as *Patri domus, et quid tibi causa doloris, exitio nautis est mare, mibi fastinat Agnos. Sunt oculis tenebræ per tantum lumen abortivæ. Sui sibi tunc abluuntur amnes.* In this last example, *sibi* is Pleonasticall, which is familiar to it, and also to *mibi* and *tibi*. Two Datives of the thing with *Sum*, or one of the Thing, and another of the Person, with *do, ducō, habeo, relinquo, tribuo, verto, venio*, and such like are usually construed, both in Verse and Prose, otherwise the Dative of the person, with Substantives of other Cases, are more familiar in Poetry, and the same is ordinarily a Pronoun as in the following instances. *Rex pius est Reipublice ornamento*: where may be noted that *Sum*, the Copula like the Conjunctions doth never stand for guide, that office in such structure belonging to *Author Instrumentum viæ, or causa* understood Elliptically, and thus supplied. *Rex pius est Author, aut causa ornamento, aut ornamenti Reipublice Artes sunt Senectuti subsidio, aut Senectutis instrumenta subsidii, aut subsidia instrumenta.* But in structure with other Verbs, the Dative of the thing, doth referre unto the Verb, and the Dative of the person doth referre to the former Dative, as the latter of two Substantives, having the place of known Genitives. *Virtutem bonis vitio vertunt improbi*

probi, for *honorum vitio*, *ne ipsis probro vitium ducatur*, for *ipsorum probro*, *aliisque ludibrio habeduntur*, for *aliorum ludibrio*.

Any Genitive being the latter of two Substantives, or a Dative in place thereof, having no Epithet construed with it may be changed to an Adjective Possessive derived thence, signifying Persons, Places, Times, Matter, Art, Sect, or some property, as *Tuo hoc futurum est commodum*, for *tibi commodum*, *herba est hortensis*, or *horti*, *vestis Hyemalis*, or *Hyemis*, *vas vitreum*, or *vitri*, *lex Grammatica*, *fastio Romanensis*, *opus mure artificiosum*, for *mirabilis artificii*, for Genitives will admitte of such Epithites only as may be changed into Adverbs with a Possessive.

In property of Speech, the Pronouns possessive *meus tuus suus noster* and *vester*, should be used with Nounes of affection, as, *amor*, *odium*, *cura*, *neglectus*, &c. when such affections are Transitive passing from the person. Otherwise the Genitives of the Primitives, *mei tui sui nostri* and *vestri* are more proper, when such affections are Passive, resting in the person, as, *Tuo favet desiderio*, for *qui desideras*, but *tui favet desiderio*, for *qui desideraris*: which Lawes are seldome observed in the Pronouns, and much lesse in other Possessives, or Primitives, whereas it would much clear the sense to be strictly observed in both kinds.

The Gerundivall Genitive hath sometimes construed with it a Genitive plural of such nouns as otherwise would be a Substantive thereunto being made a second future, as, *licentia dispiendi Pomorum*, for *dispiendorum pomorum*.

A Dative of the person, is alwayes construed with

with a Gerundivall Reſt, as properly belonging to the ſecond Future, whence the Gerunds are derived, *Vigilandum eſt cuſtodi*, not *cuſtodiz*. And it is commonly underſtood, being Pronominall, as, *diſcendum eſt aut vſulandum*, ſupply, *verbis*.

A Genitive of a Subſtantive joyned with an Epithet of eminency, for praiſe or diſpraiſe, may be changed to an Ellipticall Ablative. *Judex maximæ integritatis*, or *maxima integritate*, ſupply, *affectus, imbutus, indutus, inſignis, præditus*, &c. And both Caſes may be changed by Hyppallage, *Judex maximus integritatis*, ſupply *laude*, or *Dote*, or *maximus integritate*, for *pro integritate*, ſo *mulier multæ impudentiæ*, or *multa impudentia*, ſupply, *infamia deliquio*, &c.

Sometimes an Epithet is ſupplied by a Pronominall Reſt of the Verb Subſtantive, referring to a remarkable antecedent, that hath full force thereof. *Pater qua eſt indulgentia facile exoratur pſyduellis in gratiam reſtitui nequit*, *eiufcemodi eſt malitia*, which may thus be made intire ſtructures, *qua eſt indulgentia*, ſupply, *inſignis*, or *pro qua eſt indulgentia*, ſo *eiufcemodi eſt malitiæ*, ſupply, *reatu*, or *pro eiufcemodi malitiæ reatu*, or *culpa*.

The Genitives of proper names betokening perſons, are ſometimes conſtrued with former Subſtantives underſtood Elliptically being knowne Appellatives referring thereunto, as *itur ad Veſte*, ſupply, *templum*, *Deiphohe Glanci*, ſupply, *uxor filia ſorum, ſervæ*, with ſuch others.

The Genitive is ſometimes conſtrued with a Primitive Elliptically underſtood in the Poſſeſſive *Tua Magiſtri dogmata*, for *tui Magiſtri*, whereof in

the concordance of continued Substantives.

The Genitive of time is found Ellipticall, sometimes, but very seldome, *abest bidui*, supply, *spatio militum natus*, *belli accessus*, supply, *tempore*. Proper names of Townes or Citties, and sometimes of Islands, being of the first or second Declension, and singular number, are Genitives Ellipticall, when ought is signified to be done, or happen either in them or at them. *Sarabo natus Crete*, supply, *insula*, *Gauli*, supply *urbem non Gortynæ*, supply, *Oppido*. And such are, *humus*, and *domus*, being Appellatives, if the first be not an Adverb, for it never admitteth any Epithet in such structure, as, *Corpora fundit humus*, not *humus gelidæ*. But *Domus* will admit *meæ*, *tuæ*, *sux*, *nostræ*, *vestræ*, *alieuæ*, and none other, as, *Non absente vestimentis, quam mea est patris Domus*, not *Domus paternæ*, supply, *mensa*, or *sub recto*.

Genitives of the Person construed after the Verb Substantive, and referring to a property whether externall of fortune, or internall of manners, are put ELLIPTICALLY,

Some Substantive of a continued signification being to be supplied with them, so in the first kind, the Rect precedent should be repeated, as, *Ovis nigra est Melibœi*, supply, *Ovis*. And in the second kind *proprium* may be supplied. Or in stead thereof when it is spoken of ought that is good, *officium*, or if spoken of any thing that is evill, then, *malus* or *consuetudo* may be supplied. *Pastoris est oves tondere*, *furis deglubere*, supply, *proprium*, *hominis est errare*, supply, *Mos*, *Christiani est respicere*, supply, *officium*, where may be noted, that *mei*, *tuus*, *nostri*, *vestri*, The Genitives of Pronouns primitive

tive, will not admit such structure, but must be changed to the possessives, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum*, as, *docere meum est, discere vestrum*, supply, *officium*, And any of the former may be made a Possessive, as, *Ovis Melibesa, tondere pastorale, errare humanum*, supply, *quiddam*, or such like. Likewise *refert interest*, or in the same sense *est* will not admit any Genitive of Pronouns Primitive, but instead thereof, an Ablative of the possessives is familiarly construed with them, *causa* or *vice* being to be supplied, *Tua judicis refert*, supply, *vice*. And other Genitives either of the Person or thing will soynethereto in structure; *ut recte agant omnium est, ut boni regnent interest Reipublicæ*, where *officium*, with the former, and *bonum* with the latter kind of Genitives should be supplied.

Genitives of the measure construed with Nouns of quantity are Elliptical. *Trabs sex pedum longa duarum lata vnius crassa*, supply, *pro-mensura*, if the structure is not otherwise regular. Verbs of esteem value or concernment, as *sum* or *fio* standing for *estimo addico condico, sto, consto do distrabono, redimo, mercor, veneo, vendo venundo, licco licito, taxo, habeo, duco, pendo, puto, facio, consulo*, and *refert interest*, or in the same sense with both, *est*, are construed with these Genitives of Substantives, *stocci, nauci, pili, teruncii*, and *assis nihil*, or of Adiectives put Substantively, *huius tanti, quanti*, with their Compounds, *equi, boni, pluris, minoris, plurimi, maximus*, and *maius, parvi*, with all which *pretio* is understood Elliptically. *Pluris est ocularis testis quam auritus*, to *tanti passim sic pecunia*, supply, *pretio*, which may be an Hypallage, for *tanti o pretii*, or with supply of *res*, or *quiddam*, for

a continued Substantive, it may be made, *tanti pretii sit pecunia*. Supply *res*. Genitiues of the crime or punishment are Ellipticall, being construed, either with Nouns that signifie Guilt or Innocence, as, *reus noxijs consens assinis immunis parricidij* insons. or Verbs of accusing, condemning, or acquitting, as *accuso alligo arcesso arguo astringo cito convinco deferō deprehendo inarepo insimulo interrogo postulo damno condempno iudico teneor absoluo libero purgo* with which *crimine* or *pœna* are Ellipticall, as *reus furti, conscius homicidij, puerus sceleris, insons cœdis*, supply, *crimine*, so *reus capitis, immunis verberum*, supply, *pœna*, *accusaris perituri*, supply, *crimine*, *damnavis dupli*, *absolueris peculatus*, supply *pœna*, where may be noted that *castigo condono corrigio culpo excuso mulcto plecto pœnia reprehendo vituperō*, are construed with Accusatives of the crime or punishment, as *culpo discipuli oscitantiam*, not *Discipulum oscitantia*.

Nouns or verbs betokening affections of the mind, as Remembrance, Care, Knowledge, Certainty, Boldnesse desire hope, or what is contrary therunto, are construed with Genitiues Ellipticall having *ratione causa* or *gratia*, understood with them, as *præfagus mali, inmemor sui, improvidus Belli, indoctus sibi, dubius viæ, fidens animi appetens vini cupidus auri, securus amorum invidius procelle lætus bonorum certus vincendi*, or *victorie*, so *discriminæ mentis erubesco fortunæ fastidio vestris vestraeque ineptiarum fallor mentis gaudeo vota miror iustitiæ indolui successorum paternæ veretur ne misereat infelicitis reum satagis suarum abluiscitur meritorum meminisse iniuriarum demum recordaturus vniuersæ*.

Likewise

Likewise such Adiectivall Nounes or Verbs, and
 signifie Plenty, Power, Worthynesse, or the admi-
 ratory, are construed with Genitives Elliptically,
 as *inanis vacuus*, or *expers ira*, *divitiarum plenus*, or
moris laetis abundans, *intellectus indiget operis*, *patiens cho-
 rap artium compos voti inops*, *mentis*, *tempus nationis*
positur, *oluptatum in his*, or *homo indignus a bonis*,
Cura tuae virtutis digna, *Immunis Belli fuit et liberis*,
ma Legum Roma, these last examples be Grecismes
 & mostly used by Poets. Moreover Nounes either
 of affections with Genitives being their seats, or
 of plenty, worth and power with Genitives, signi-
 fying the parts affected, may both be reduced to
 a Genitive or Ablative of the property belonging
 to praise or dispraise by Hypallage, as *vir anxius*
mentis, or *anxia mentis*, or *anxia mente*, so *multus ci-
 bi* or *multi tibi nullus fides*, or *nullus fides*, *beatus cor-
 rebri*, or *beatus cerebri*, *infelix fortuna*, or *infelixis for-
 tunc*, *amplus nati* or *ampli nati*, *integer viti*, or *in-
 tagra* with such others.

Lastly, Nouns of likenesse, property or com-
 munity are construed also with Ellipticall Geni-
 tives; *instar habet meriti*, *tamquam chorus par est*, *Dom-
 ni similis vitium non Senectutis*, *proprium sed etiam*
Juventus commune. All which like consors, soci-
 us, affinis, Compes, with many more, may passe for
 Substantives, and as such admit of Datives in-
 stead of Genitives, so *tui studiosus mei necessarius*
suorum liberalis alienorum profusus vitiorum sagax,
laborum patiens, aliorum doctus, scelerum conscius,
 are construed with Genitives as the former, but
 such will not be changed to the Datives. And
 it may be noted that Nouns or Verbs, of Desire,
 hope, care, knowledge, may in place of Genitives

be construed with the Infinitive or other Mood's reducible thence, as *cupidus divitiarum ditescere ditescendi*, or *u ditescit*. And those of worthability or boldnesse may in place thereof be construed with Accusatives, and the Preposition *ad*. Or with the Infinitive. *Virgo tue forme*, or *ad tuam formam digna nubere*, or *qua nubat tibi digna*, so *impar tui congressus*, or *ad tuum congressum*, or *tecum congrredi*, or *ad congregiendum*, *audax facinoris*, or *ad facinus*, or *ut faciat*.

Construction of the Acquisitive regular or Ellipticall.

Nouns or Verbs signifying honour, favour, profit, pleasure, ease, yeeldance, obedience, trust, promise, performance, command, discovery, nearnesse, likenesse, or what is contrary thereunto, are construed regularly with Acquisitives of the thing or persons notifying the scope of such relation, *Id prudentia consentaneum, tibi maxime decet*: where note that the Accusative *est* *decet* or *oportet* do either precede an Infinitive expressed or understood, or otherwise is Ellipticall, as hath been instanced in that case. *Nemini amicus, faves voluptatibus saluti noxiis, res adversæ bonis prosunt iis non obfunt*. In which sense, *iuvare ledere*, and *offendere*, are construed with Accusatives, so *Superioribus supplicamus*, *authoritati alienæ intercedentes*, *tali nunquam supplices*. In which sense, *precor obtestor oro imploro obsecro quaeso*, are construed with Accusatives. *Ars alteri facilis & iucunda est, alteri displicet, quatenus ipsi difficilis, tibi fidus tuæ probitati non diffido nobis*.

nobis moriger iussu parebis, decretum nobis nunciavit, nulli mandavit, ut vestigalia Cesari solverentur, pertinacia est constantiæ vitina similis propinqua finitima, vel saltem non contraria, hoc alienissimum est, or dissidet tue arti & personæ.

Regular acquisitives are also construed with all compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum* : Or with other Verbs compounded with *satis bene* or *male*, or with any Verb compounded with *præ*, *ad* *con* *sub* *super* *ante* *post* *ob* *in* and *inter*, when such Prepositions do not referre to their proper cases, as if they were not compounded. *Est* and *suppetit*, for *adest*, and *videor*, for *appareo*, be construed also with such Acquisitives *velle suum cuique est*, *mibi rerum suppetit usus*, *tibi videris optimus*.

Acquisitives of the person, are commonly construed with Verbs Active of taking away *nummos abstulit eripuit exemit subtraxit furatus est mibi*. Or of the thing with Verbs Neuter of forbearance, *parcit vacat abstinet supersedet cessat cedit*, or *discedit certamini*.

Participialls in *bilis*, and Participles in *dis*, are construed with Acquisitives only : *nullo penetrabilis astro lucus erat*. *Visa mibi soror est visendaque denuo nulli*. Other Moods of Verbs passive are construed with Acquisitives of the person, but very seldom : *Ego non intelligor ulli*.

These Adjectives, *par apius utilis idoneus facilis* with their Compounds, and *natus promptus paratus expeditus alacer ferox ardens vebemens*, may by variation chang the Acquisitive to an Accusative with *ad*, or to an Infinitive, or any other Mod reducible thence, *vir idoneus Bello*, or *ad Bellum*, *Belligerare*

Belligerant Belligeret, or ad Belligerandum.

Ellipticall Acquisitives were noted in their proper places. Constructions of Ablativalls regular and Ellipticall.

Ablativalls are regularly construed with some Prepositions serving thereunto. And such are all Appellatives and proper Names of Countries, and commonly of Islands signifying the place whence motions rise, or wherein or whereat they rest as, *veniens ex urbe discessit ab Italia, uxorem in Lemno ducturus.*

But proper Nouns of Townes and Cities being of the third Declension, or being pluralls only of the first or second Declension in the same signification as the former are Ellipticall Ablativalls, and so are *ruri* or *dome* signifying from a place, nor at or in it, *dome hodie mansurus dome eras discedam est mihi fac modicum, rure or ruri*: such Ablativalls ending anciently in *i*. as *tempus* and *vesperi*, *ignavi Amyclis Lacedæmone natus.*

Ablativalls of time are regular, whether it be articulate time answering to the Question when, *de luce vigilat, sub nocte dormit*, or be a continue time, answering to the Question how long, *pacem pollicetur pro triginta diebus ab annis triginta natus*, but more commonly both are Ellipticall without Prepositions, and the articulate is more familiarly the Ablativall, but the continue an Accusative.

Ablativalls of the person construed with Verbis Passive in any Moods besides the Participle, are commonly regular, *qui vult ab improbis laudari a probis*

probris culpabitur, and they are constantly such with the Neuter Passives, *Vapulo, venio exultatio*, and the Compounds of it, *benefit a Deo*, or any impersonall passive, *Regnabit a multis*, and mostly with Verbs of asking, receiving, or taking away, as *veniam oremus ab ipso, ab oraculo andivi ab hostibus misere acceptus, e vita, or de medio solutus*, and with Nounes or Verbs of nearness or distance, *Nobiscum equales, or collati, ab aliis discrepare, or sine diversis*, which three last may be changed to Acquisitives; *id vitio affine distinet pietati exime mihi vellem*.

Ablativalls are sometimes, but seldome used regularly, with Verbs or Nounes of plenty, or emptinesse, *Liber a metu vacat a negotiis*; but they are commonly Ellipticall, as *opibus abundat*. And such Ablatives by variation may be made Rectis, and the Rectis Acquisitives, as *opes illi abundant*. Moreover such Ablativalls may be changed into Genitives, whereof before in that construction. But these Verbs *emunzo, frando, levo, orbo, privo, spolio viduo*, are constant to Ellipticall Ablatives, without variation, and such are *glut, sanguine, carne, lacte, and capus, or cassus oculis*.

Ablativalls of Price are very seldome used regularly, as *litteræ pro nihilo habentur*, but are usually found Ellipticall with Nounes or Verbs, as *arvo venalis, carus whole vilis asse observatus drachma*. Likewise *magno parvo vili paululo minimo nimio dimidio duplo*, with such are put Substantively, *danda magno accepta parvo ducuntur*.

Ablativalls betokening particular crimes, or *utroque alio altero nulla ambobus plurimis*, referring to crimes, are used regularly with Nounes or Verbs,

as *uxorem accusavit de pudicitia & veneficio de ambobus*; or *de altero damnata est de rapina & homicidio reus ageris*; but other Ablatives of crimes, or punishment, are commonly Ellipticall, and may be made Genitives, whereof before in that construction.

Ablatives with the Preposition *de* are construed with *mereor*, and *ago ambigo celo certo cogito dico loquor glorior iudico quaro statuo tracto*, and such other. Or with Substantives having the same sense, as *liber his sermo sententia, &c.* or with Nouns or Verbs of affection, and such may be changed to a Genitive instanced in that construction.

Ablatives with *e, de, or ex*, are construed regularly with Nouns of the Comparative or Superlative degree being put partitively instanced already in their concordance. But when Ablatives betoken the measure of excess, or the part exceeded with such Nouns or Verbs, they are Ellipticall *ceteris multo doctior, ab his virtute superiatur*.

And such are Ablatives of the measure after Nouns that betoken quantity, *Liber tribus digitis crassus*. And such is the Ablative in this example, *It clamor alto* where *tenuis* may be supplied. And contrariwise a Pronominall Ablative is sometime to be supplied with *tenuis*. *Est aliquod prodire tenuis* for *eatenus*, or *hattenus*. And otherwise *Calo* may Greek wise be put for *calius*.

Ablativalls of the integrall part or matter, be alwayes regular, *homo constat ex animo & corpore, vas integrum ex auro*, and sometimes of the efficient with Verbs Neuter, *pre timore fluit*, but alwayes with the Passives: *a patre diligimur*. And sometimes

Sometimes of the manner, *cum luctu loquatur*. And ordinarily the Gerundivall Ablatives, *ex defendendo quam ab accusando uberior gloria comparatur*. Other Ablatives of the cause or instrument, or part affected, or of the manner, or such like adjunct, or circumstance are Ellipticall, being construed with Nouns or Verbs. *Natura parens imperio tyrannus quisque deterior est licentia miles ense validus Consilium specie latum officio durum eventu luctuosum aeger corpore sanus mente natione Britannus ætate proventus ingenio tardus moribus severus nomine Grammaticus rebarbarus, vinces veritate digito compesce labellum onusti crapula relevandi sunt abstinentia, mente, ac artibus contremescunt, tuo solius ductu nobis hæc mala creantur*; where may be noted that Ablatives of the cause or part may be resolved to the Rectis, and of the manner to Adjectives or Adverbs, and of either kind, otherwise, as in the following instances; *veritas quis qui, or quoniam verum loqueris vinces, or veritas vinces digitus labellum compescat abstinentes crapulam relevabunt, vem peregit mira celeritate, or celerrimus or celerrime, mens & artus sibi contremiscunt te solo duce, or quum tu duceres, or a te duce mala hæc creantur*; where the Ablative called absolute may admit a Preposition: *Auro loquente pollebis, for si loquatur aurum, or pro auro loquente. Concurrent ægri audito medicum venisse, for ab adventu rumore, or quando adventus fama crebresceret, so ulceribus ressecandis or dum secarentur, or de futura ulcerum lésione contristantur. Te convallituro, or postquam convalesces, or de tua valitudine gratulabimur senecta*

Senecta ætate, or quamquam senesceret, or in senectute literas didicit. Thus all such called ablatives absolute are Ellipticall, but may admit of Prepositions with them: Ablatives of the same, or of a cognate signification construed with Verbs neuter, or with neutrall Deponents are alwayes Ellipticall. *Vita vivit longissima rectaibat via sua fidunt sapientia morte moritur carne velcitur officio fungitur viribus nititur, urbe, or urbis potitur seipso fruetur bonis lætatur sese dignatur honore, or se putat dignum cultu, or coli, pecunia tibi utendum est, or tibi usus, or opus est id solum etiam non quo est opus sed quod necesse, where opus and necesse differ in sense and structure, but with acquirives they joyn in both, id mixus mihi necesse, aut opus est.*

Ablatives are Ellipticall construed with Verbs of forbidding, as *arceo, veto, interdico, prohibeo*, or with Verbs of affecting, as *prosequor, afficio, præditus imbutus, aqua interdico, amore prosequor, virtute præditus literis imbutus*. And such are Ablatives, construed with *natus, prægnatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus editus*, as *nate Dea*. And such are the Ablatives, *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, construed with *refert, interest*, and *est* whereof before in the structure of the Genitives.

Constructions of Accusatives regular and Ellipticall.

Nouns that imply some suffering, and bound a transient action are only regular Accusatives construed with Verbs Active or Deponent, or with Verbs neuter, having a cognate signification with
such

such Accusatives, as *voluptatem cepi*, or *voluptas me cepit*, *pacem ambiens litem sortior*. These examples, *dulce canit horrendum sonat multa garrat bacchanalia vivit*, are neutrals put adverbially Greekwise, and seldome used save in Poetry. But the rest that follow are Nouns and Verbs of the same sense.

viram vivit, iter currit sanguinem sitit nefas peccat aves ea vescuntur quæ rapiunt pedibus mea bona uteris patria commoda poritur officium functus estis ac ut amorem fruat allium olet paternam vocem sonat. All which ioyned with some Epithets, are more familiarly read in the Ablative, whereof before in that construction. But *Hircum olet, hominem sonat*, are Metonymies of the subject for the adiunct, and therefore cannot be made Abiatives till they are reduced to a cognat sense, as *Hirci fetore olet*, *humana voce sonat*. And such are, *peritus Ignaviam*, for *Ignavia fordibus*, so *auri scrupulus argenti denos valet*, for *Denorum precio*.

Some Verbs Active with an Accusative of the person admit another of the thing in a cognate signification to their owne, and such are, *induo doceo moneo hortor suadeo consulo. celo taceo percontor postulo rogo flagito posco peto oro obsecro*, as *induo*, or *exuo te vestes*, *doceo te literas*, *id ipsum nos monuisti quod cogitabamus*, *fames nos talia suavit multa vos hortabar amicos hanc rem consulam, id parentes celo vos sensum taceo hoc illos percontor pacem te poscimus*, *te veniam oramus*, *vitæ rationem vos postulo sententiam vos rogo alimenta vos posco*, whereof *induo* will change the Accusative of the person, to an Acquisitive, or of the thing.

to an Ablative, *doces, moveo, consulo, percontor,* &c. change the Accusative of the thing to an Ablative with *de, postulo*, and the rest change the Accusative of the person, to an Ablative with *ab*. And all of them retain the Accusative of the thing being made passive, which doth make it probable, such cases are Ellipticall, having *ad circum inxta secundum*, or such like understood with them, because they do not determine a transient action, requisite to regular Accusatives, as aforesaid. Moreover the Accusatives of the thing being mostly Pronominalls, when they have not the same signification with the leading Verb must not be used otherwise then as they are warranted by good Authors in their practise or use thereof.

These examples, *Reges vos turba creavit, Te virum praesta Tyrannidem latrocinium vocamus*, are Accusatives of continued, not of divers significations.

Accusatives construed with Verbs or Adjectives of profit, likeness, nearness, inclination, or the contrary are construed regularly with *ad* the Preposition, and may be changed to the Infinitive, or to the Acquisitive instanced in that construction.

Accusatives of Nouns Appellative, or proper names of Countries, and commonly of Islands, notifying the place, whereto a motion tendeth, are regularly construed with *ad* the Preposition. *Profectus ad Galliam mox ad urbem exinde ad forum se contulit. Denique ad Samum concessit.* But proper names of Townes and Cities in that signification are constantly Ellipticall. *Athenas & Megara migravit.* And sometimes proper names of Islands,

Ilands. *Cyprum profectus est*. And seldome of Countries, as, *Italiam petijt*, so *proxime Hispaniam*, and such like have *ad* understood with them Elliptically.

The Accusatives of *Rus* and *Dominus* in both numbers are Ellipticall in the same sense, *Nuptime domos & rura sua redierunt*. And such are names of Nations used for the Countrey, and of speciall actions used for the place, wherein they are done, both being Metonymies, the first of Inhabitants contained for the continent, in the last of adjunct acts for the place where they are acted. *Mauros veniunt*, for *Mauritaniam*, it *inficias exequias suppetias*, or *Cubitum venatum*, and such like Supines. But Accusatives may be regular, if the motion reach not to the Town, but neare it, or the proper names of Townes have Epithets with them. *Ad Capuam venit*, for *ante juxta*, or *prope*, *Hoc iter ad dolias proficisci cogor Athenas*.

Nounes that answer the question how far determining the space or intervall of place indefinitely like those that referre to particular places by the question whether are Ellipticall Accusatives after Verbs of motion, *vix pedem aut unguem latum hinc discessit*: And sometimes they are regular, *per stadium Olympicum ingreditur Milo*, *surgit res arbor in ulnas*. And sometimes they are Ablatives after Verbs that have no expresse mention of moving; *abest hinc quingenis millibus passuum*. And such are measures of length, breadth, or thickness, *umbra tres ulnas longa*, which may be made Ablativalls, or Genitives Ellipticall instanced in those constructions.

Nouns that betoken a continuall time, are
M commonly

commonly regular Accusatives; *per id tempus, intra sex annos*. And sometimes are Ellipticall, *per id ætatis, majorem viâ partem infelix*. And sometimes they are made Ablatives; *docuit nos quatuor annis*. And very seldome Genitives instanced in that structure.

Nounes that betoken the part affected with a property or passion construed with Adjectives or Verbs, either Neuter or Passive will be Ellipticall Accusatives, being Græcisms. *Os vocemque Deo similis sed cætera dispar, dolet caput, redimissus tempora lauro*. But latinewise, such Nounes will properly be made Ellipticall Ablatives instanced in that structure.

Of the due placing of Words in sentences.

An orderly disposition of words in sentences doth require a foure fold circumspection.

1. That some sentences or parts of speech accustomed to certain places be not removed thence without good warrant.
2. That warrantable elegancies may be preferred before vulgar postures.
3. That an Euphony be preserved in both.
4. That the perspicuity of sense be not impaired by any.

1. Of sentences and words designed to certain places.

1. In prose the continued sentences, or Ablatives called the absolute, do commonly begin the periods.

2. Pronouns Relative, or conjunctive Adverbs,

do usually begin such sentences as are continued.

3. Adverbs of exciting, forbidding, shewing, or wishing, and any Interrogatives pronominall or adverbiall, being no Encliticalls should ordinarily begin the principall sentences.

4. Moreover in every sentence customarily Adjectives are placed before their Substantives, the Antecedents before reciprocalls, all kinds of Adverbs before the words whereto they should referre, excepting some notified in their proper places; And finite Verbs are placed last. But in verse, all the former Rules will admit variations, being then authorised, when they are used with approved Poets, whose practise is the best guide therein.

2. Of Elegance in some postures swarving from the Vulgar.

Verbs finite whether those called Impersonall, or the Neuters referring to sundry causes, will best beseeem the first place, *dedecet viros muliebriter rixari, vigilat Dominus & servus deflorescit formæ dignitas, aut morbo, aut vetustate.* Some Adverbs are placed elegantly after the words which they do limit, *mitigati admodum sunt eorum animi, postquam diu nimium disputassent, impense cupiunt, sed consulunt parum, non succedit quod faciunt sedulo, futura prospicit longissime,* so commonly the finall Polisyllables will smoothe the sounds of sentences and make the Adjectives at last gratefull, *nihil isthoc visum est molestius, quod ipso facit, non putat injustum,* and specially when such have before

them some Parenthesis, *parentum dilectio est* (me
judice) *maxima*, such are dissyllabicall Adjectives,
 specially Pronouns after Substantives of many
 syllables, *inter oratores bonos raro convenit*, *facul-*
tas nulla tibi dabitur, and the Genitive is hand-
 somely leated between the Adjective and its Sub-
 stantive, or a Preposition, and the case whereto
 it serveth, *sagacissimus natura inenagator Aristoteles*,
omnes omnium charitates patria complectitur, *ad illu-*
us temporis incommoda hoc accessit. Proper names
 being Polysyllables placed first grace the sen-
 tence, else are disgraced, except an Epithet of
 praise or dispraise doth lead them. *Neoptolemus*
cognominatur Achilles filius, or *Nobilissima Achilles*
proles Neoptolemus cognominatur, *qui tyrocinium in*
Bello adolescentulus posuit, where the principall,
 not the continued sentence doth lead the rest.
 And if continued sentences be but short, the sub-
 ject of the principall whereto they refer should
 lead them, *Spiritus*, *qui densatur hyemali frigore*,
in nebulam quasi concretus cernitur. Last Prose pla-
 ced versewise, or verse placed prosewise will lose
 their elegance.

3. Of Euphony requisite in placing words.

The good sound of words joyned in compo-
 sition, are the best patterns of Euphony in words
 joyned by Apposition, with this caution, that
 letters sounding well being doubled between
 words compounded, have ill sounds between
 words apposed, wherefore the former may not u-
 sually end in the same letter, or in another of a
 cognate sound, with that which doth begin the
 next

next word after. Nor in any wise may the same syllable end the former, and begin the next word after, for that hath neere Alliance unto stammering.

2. The same word repeated, without a figure cannot sound well, and therefore it should be supplied by a Relative or a Synonymy.

3. Homoteleutons, being figures should be used accordingly as rarities.

4. Sandy or loose words that will not concatenate like untunable feet, ending every where with the words in verses, will make sentences have flat and jarring sounds. In fine, the advise of judicious eare in this Office will be of singular iteed.

4. Of clearing the sense of words in every posture.

As the former Rules conduce thereto, so likewise it will much availe for perspicuity of sense in words. 1 To preserve in sentences a naturall order by placing the whole before the party, and causes before effects, and the worthiest before lesse worthy; *Omnis familia, parentes, liberi, servitia, indefessis laboribus victumque vitant.* 2 To shun the multiplying of Relatives, answering either to single or to sundry Antecedents, and in stead thereof, either to repeat such Antecedents, or to use Distributives, specially when the Antecedents are of the same Gender and number, as, *Socordes ab ignavis discrepant, discedunt enim socordes prospiciendo, ignavi fortiter agendo, in fortitudine, illi consilio carent.*

3. To use Laconisme will conduce thereto, for

prolix sentences will tire the Auditors understanding and with all begeth obscurity.

4. Lastly, to distinguish words by accents according to the Rules thereof specified in their proper place, and to give all sentences proper points regulated before in the Rules of Art for writing.

The FIGURES of ELOCUTION

Figures swarving from the common course, but having Authority from the most learned in the Latine tongue, do belong

1. Some to Elementary parts of words, being Letters and Syllables.

2. Some to intire words consisting either in their sense being Tropologicall, or in their Etymology changing the parts of speech, and their affections.

3. Some to sentences having Andmalous Syntax, all which are handled in their proper places.

4. Some to the whole speech being dressed up with artifice of Oratory called Elocution. Wherefore as Tropes advance and quicken the sense of words, so the figures of Elocution heighten sentences for a subtle and secret operation upon mens Judgements and affections, either 1. To perswade them to assent, or 2. To introduce a prejudice of their dissent, or 3. To amuse

amuse them, and so to suspend their resolutions.

The Schemes or figures of Elocution, being very numerous, may be reduced to five kinds, proper to so many offices conpying with the principal seats of Oratory to wit.

1. Some being used exegetically to cleere the sense meet for the Narrative part.

2. Some used Apodictically fitting the seat of Arguments in Confirmations.

3. Some used Catastrophically mustring a number of Conjectures, where the weight of a solid reason faileth peculiar to Amplifications.

4. Some used Analeptically, repeating words or sounds with Glosses to make things spoken of more heeded as more concerned suitable with any place where the matter is weighty, and the hearers dull.

5. Some Pathetically agreeing with any place requiring indignation or compassion, wrought by a previous passion in the oratour. And in each kinde the most usefull are selected, and the rest declined.

Of Figures serving to Narrations.

In the narrative part the office of a figure is either, 1. To distribute the matter handled to its severall branches; so making way to remove what is unconcerned. And there to will conduce *Memorismus*, &c. or 2. To determine the question positively, whereto serve *Brachypis*, &c.

of

Of distinguishing.

Merismus doth orderly dispose the whole controversy to sundry parts, of purpose, to insist upon the point concerned. *Delatori* lubentissime ignoscatur, aut ob *mandatum* coacto, aut ob *agestatem* querulo, aut ob *pietatem* spontaneo, s; d malitioso, qui data, opera male agit, nemo bonus indulgeat. *Palindromia* hath some affinity therewith, making diverse words of severall Relations answer orderly each unto the other.

Pastor arator, *eques*, pavi, colui, , *superavi*,

Corras, *rus*, *hostes*, *fronde* *ligone* manu.

2. *Paradiastole* doth distinguish things that seemingly are like by cleere unlikelineſſe.

Virtutem fortuna premit, non obruit illam.

Iniquum est pro astuto sapientem, pro audaci fortem pro illiberati frugalem haberi, iniquissimum vero subdolos nuncupari prudentes, confidentes magnanimos, sordidissimos quosque bone frugi viros, virtutes enim vitij admixta a potiori jure denominantur, vitia vero ab virtutibus alienissima earum titulis non sunt dignanda.

3. *Amphidiorthosis*, used also to distinguish, doth preface to a future offence and therewith salve it.

— *horrida* narro,

Intulpanda tamen, quia pro re sermo paratur.

Hominaciones auctoritate exutos hominem vincere est facinus, Civem incarcerare scelus, necare nefas, in crucem tollere ecquid est insolentius? Proh malum, quid dicam? Principem colli, jugulari, subsannari, Parricidio plus est, Theomachia est.

4. *Aphorismus* or *Metanoia* doth likewise recall a word and rectifie it.

Heu

Heu Cives, si forte licet vos dicere Cives.

*Hac est ultio sceleris, nisi fors anquo durius loquor,
nam sceleris est prohibitio, non ultio.*

5. *Anaclassis, Antimetabole Chiasmus Diallelon*
Enagonion used to the same office determine things
with a difference from the vulgar sense.

Qui sapiunt regnant, pax est opulencia regni.

Cum senibus puer est, cum puerisque Senex.

*Aliorum sapientiæ fortuna, aliorum fortuna sapien-
tia non suppeditat. Edendum ut vivas, non viven-
dum ut edas.*

6. *Antithesis, Enantiosis, Syncreisis*, notice dif-
ferent events of different causes.

Ille novo veterum vagus est errore locorum.

*Amicos parit obsequium, hostes veriloquium, do-
norum ante hac profusos, postmodum egenos fore o-
portet. Alter dando benignus, alter accipiendo astutus.
Quam opportuna erat expugnantibus civitas, tam in-
expugnabiles erant civium animi. Ego plector, quod
tu peccasti, nos meruimus, quæ præmia vos repor-
tatis.*

Of Defining.

1. *Brachyepia, Characterismus, Enargia, Hypo-
typosis*, will exactly describe as it were peccè-meale
persons, facts, time or place.

Crine ruber, niger re, brevis pede lumine luscus,

Venit hyemps, teritur Sicyonia bacca trapeti,

Glande sues redempti lati, dant arbuta silvæ.

*Amicitia, consuetudines, vicinitates, clientela,
ludi, festique dies, quid haberent voluptatis, cærendo
magis intellexi, quam perfrundo*

2. *Hypomone, or Paradoxon* will decline the
vulgar

vulgar opinion, and introduce some unexpected decision of the thing in hand.

—*Verus amicus*

Nec prece, nec pretio, sed enim virtute paratur.

*Scientiam habet, non ut sciatur: quo quidnam te-
vius! aut inanius; non ut ipsam, vendat, quo nihil
est vilius, sed quo in suam inspiciat vitam.*

3. *Antistasis*, or *Anatopsis*, will serve to the same office.

*Ita salus victis, nullam sperare salutem.
Perissem, nisi perissem.*

2. Of Figures proper to confirmation.

In Argumentative Topicks, Figures have re-
course to essentiall causes, specifical properties
and necessary consequences, ranged for proof of
what is propounded, whereto comply *Aitiologia*,
&c. or for disproving of the contrary suitable
with *Antistrophe*, &c.

Of Prooving.

1. *Aitiologia* in some respect called also *Ap-
phasis*, doth confirme what was propounded by
some concludent reasons.

*An mihi cantando victus non redderet illum,
Quem mea carminibus moruisset fistula, caprum?*

*Grassatori jure licet eripere vitam, qui eriperet a-
lienam. Apopbenisma* doth imply a reason for an-
swer to a supposed doubt, *fac velis perficis*. *Lit-
terarum sunt radices amarae sed fructus dulces.*

2. *Synathroismus* is a Series of causes concur-
ring to the same effect. *Multa simul ab ultione le-*

sum

sum revocant, officium, consuetudo, tempus, existimatio periculum, religio, which with severall conjunctions set between them is called *Polyzygeton*, or without any such as in the former instance is called *Asynzygeton* or *Dialysis*, being much more elegant as noting each cause apart sufficient.

3. *Synonymia* differeth from the former, notifying not divers causes, but different circumstances of the same cause. *Ossum, quies, tranquillitas, pax demum adest inopinata, pugnavit, vicit, triumphavit.*

4. *Synociosis* or *Sysceusis* will elegantly expresse how contrary causes may produce the same effects.

Par meritum gratesve pares pœnasve reposit.

7. *Illiberatis & profusus sunt aequae inopes, aequae infames, alter qui suis rebus uti nollet, alter qui suas res dissiparet, ideoque pari pœna sunt afficiendi.*

Of disproving.

1. *Antistrophe* doth retort a reason used to disprove what it should have proved.

*An quisquam perimit vivum, conditque peremptum!
Festinusve fugit letibalem vindicis iram.*

Bella est hac accusatio, qua me litigij postulas, eademque opera mihi litem intendis.

2. *Prolepsis, Anisphora, or Procatastene*, do prevent objections, stealing to a good esteem by a seeming ingenuity, labouring withall to avoid or abate a prejudice.

— *Scio me Danais e Gentibus unum.*

Testem produci vult adversarius, fateor nullum affore,

affore, præter suam ipsius conscientiam, commotus enim lachrymis, quod petebat dedi, solus, soli, sin hæc negabit, vobis satisfactum esse de utriusque veritate oportet. And the reasons given are called *Prosopopoeisis*,

3. *Epitrope*, doth neglect what is objected, as impertinent were it granted.

*Tequere Italiam, ventis pete regna per undas,
Esto Rex, Tyrannus, Sacrilegus, præ multis unum
maius. Profundat, perdat, pereat, nostra non interest.*

4. *Exuthenismus* doth adde unto the former some scorne or sharp reproofe then called *Epi-plexis*, or *Epitimesis*, or *Schesis*.

*Egregium facinus, miscebat græca latinis.
Indignum est Italos Trojam succendere flammis,
Quid face Trojanos atra vim ferre Latinis?*

Dux vestes bolligerat calamo, militat dolo, expugnat nummo. Egote armatis ejeci, non dejeci, una litera tantum latet facinus.

5. *Alloiosis* distinguishing between persons or their facts by different circumstances doth accordingly excuse or aggravate crimes.

Quod licuit iuvenis, licet etatique senili?

*Aliud est vivere in æqua civitate ubi lex vult,
aliud sub unius imperium devenire, ubi singularis potestas regnat, illic lege fretos libertatis meminisse,
hic unius potestati traditos quotidianam commentari
subjectionem, opus est.*

Homicidium aliud est a furioso, aliud ab ebrioso perpetratum, illud condonatur, ut involuntarium, hoc capitale judicatur, ut voluntarium, eodem censu (cum ebrietate istius causa) numerandum, ebrius adhuc dupliti tenetur crimine, scilicet ebrietatis & homicidij.

6. *Ananæion*

6. *Anancaion* hath the same office with the former, in preventing prejudices caused by necessity, *nihil valuit pro fratre deprecatio, cum judicaret Tyrannus cujus crudelitas omnem naturæ necessitudinem exinguebat, verum enimvero quamvis auxilium a fratris periculo violentia submovisset, quod potui, fecit, nempe calamitatis particeps etiam.*

3. Of Figures meet for Amplifications.

“To the seat of amplification do belong figures that comply with conjecturall proofs by circumstances of time, place, persons, but specially of facts considered in the circumspection of their possibility, lawfullnesse, honour, profit, pleasure. 2. In their estimate from authority of the wise, and practise of the best. 3. In their comparison with, or contrariety to other facts, of which sort are *Auxesis*, &c.

1. *Auxesis* doth extenuat, or else aggravate facts be they good or evill by their severall adjuncts. *Templa Deum, festique dies, sacra Concio furtum Nil prohibent, nequæ remoratur AnatHEMA divum.*

Dum restituuntur ad integrum damnati, solvuntur vincti, reducuntur exules, promoventur perduelles, rescinduntur leges, Equis Rempublicam ruere non intelligat? And the severall progresse of vertue or vice, doth give this figure the name of *Exallage*.

2. *Dinosis* doth specially expose the heynousnes and horror of vices. *Hæc una ejus est stultitia, ut nullus hominem, ejusmodi furoris, ut nullus feminam, ejusmodi crudelitatis, ut nullus matrem appellet, quæ fuit uxor Gneri, Noverca filij filia pellex*

3. *Icon* or *Homoiosis* doth illustrate things by some similitude which is call and of fact, is called

ed *Paradigma*, if imaginary and feigned, is called *Parabole*.

Qualis populea mœrens Phlœmela sub umbra.

Amillas queritur fœtus.

Orpheus in sylvis, inter Delphinas Arion.

*Quod natura tranquillum est, ventorum procellis,
mare conturbatur; Talis est exercitus, ubi feditio
concitatur; Qualis in mundo Phœnix rediit vivus, Ta-
lis imperio Aristides restituitur.*

4. *Epiphonema* is a quick short inference from what was said before, intended for applause to all the rest,

Tantum religio potuit suadere majorum.

*Scilicet aliam vellent libertatem, quam per mortem,
such will handsomely close an Epigram.*

4. Of Figures repeating words or sounds.

1. Words are repeated sometimes together, if in the same sentence, called *Epizeuxis*, if in divers called *Anadiplosis*; and this last continued called *Climax*.

2. Sometimes asunder, eith er in the beginning of diverse sentences, called *Epanaphora*, or in the end thereof called *Epistrophe*, or in both places called *Symproce*.

3. Sometimes in the beginning, and end of diverse simple Theses called *Epanalepsis*, or only in the end of Mixttheses called *Epanodus*.

2. Sounds are repeated by *Paronomasia*, *Polyp-
tonon*, *Hamisoteleuton*, *Oxymoron*.

Of Words repeated.

1. *Epizeuxis*, *Diplosis*, or *Pro trope* doth repeat the same word together in the same sentence, with some additionall explanation put unto the latter; wherewith *inquam* may be supplied.

Ah Coridon Coridon quæ te dementia cecidit
Vos hortor socij, nunc nunc insurgite remis.

Adeste, *adeste* *sceleris ultrices*. Likewise *Diascope*, or *Diafole* inserting a word between, is accounted a species of the former.

Duc (age) *duc ad nos.*

Excitate (*si potestis*) *excitate ipsum ab inferis.*

2. *Anadiplosis*, or *Palintologia* doth repeat continually, the same word, but as of diverse sentences closing the first, and beginning the next, and having otherwise the same modifications as the former, it is mostly used in Verse, or being more continued, is called *Gradatio*.

Deiphobum vidi lacrum crudeliter ora,
Ora manusque ambas.

Hic tamen vivit, vivit limmo in senatum venit.

Imperator vivat, vivat & vincat, vincat salusque redeat.

3. *Climax* doth sometimes differ from the former, that repeating alwaies together the same individuall word; but this repeating often, the same onely in the Originall, or inserting some other words between the same Numericals.

Quod libet, idque licet, sibi, quod licet, id satis audent,

Quodque audent, faciunt, faciunt, quodcumque molestum.

Nos

Nos præstat inopia, diligentes, diligentiâ opulentos, opulentiâ proteruos, protervia deinde inopes, in grum circumquaque versos. Epanaphora, or Epibole, doth repeat words asunder in the beginning of divers Sentences.

Hic gelidi fontes, hic mollia prata Licori,

Hic nemus, hic toto tecum consumerer ævo.

Ego quæstoribus interminabar, ne stipendio sumptum facerent, Ego armentarijs patefaciendis obstabam, Ego arma offerri prohibebam. And some use Synonymies instead of the same words repeated. Dolui clandestinum hostem intra muros impune vagari, ægre iuli vestri omnium facilitatem unius fallacia tentari, me commovit in accipienda injuria plurimorum lætitiâ ostentari. Some range therewith Diæresis, distributing as to the same, so to sundry Subjects severall properties

Nocte leves stipulæ melius, nocte arida prata

Tondentur, noctis lentus non deficit humor.

Spirat aper, fluit unda fremi leo, sibilat angust. Spirant venti, florent prata, frondescent nemora, mitescent fructus.

5. Epistrophe doth contrariwise repeat the same word at the end of diverse sentences.

—Gravis est Cantantibus umbra.

Juniperi gravis umbra, nocent & frugibus umbræ.

Primo ad Belligerandum nos impulit Philippus, Denique calamitati nostræ successit Philippus.

6. Symploce doth comprehend both the former, repeating the same words, in the beginning and end of diverse sentences.

Quam bene Cæne tuo potiram nurus esse parenti.

Quam bene Cæne meo poteris Gener esse parenti.

Quis

Quis legem tulit? Nullus! Quis populum in tribus distribuit? Nullus. Quis decem viros creavit? Nullus. Some call the same *Comotes*.

7. *Epanalepsi* doth repeat sometimes one, but oftner many words that begin simple Theses at the end thereof, placing between some forcing reasons that move thereto.

*Victus amore tui, cognato sanguine victus.
Phosphore redde diem, quid gaudia nostra moraris,
Cæsare venturo, Phosphore redde diem.*

Huc pater O Lenæ, tuis hic omnia plena.

Muneribus tibi pampineo gravidus Autumno floret ager, spumat plenis vindemia labris.

Huc pater o Lenæ veni.

Libentissime profiterer, vos esse homicidas, si foret integrum, libentissime profiterer.

8. *Epanodus* doth repeat at the close of periods (having mixt Theses) sometimes one, and sometimes two words of the last sentence returning to a particular account of such as are repeated.

— *Divellimur inde*

Iphitus & Pelias mecum, quorum Iphitus ævo jam gravior.

Crudelis mater magis, an puer improbus ille?

Improbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater.

Demophoon ventis & verba, & vela dedisti.

Vela queror reditu, verba cavere fide.

Gratiam, qui refert, habet, et qui habet, in eo quod habet, refert.

Of sounds repeated.

9. *Paronomasia* in Nouns, and *Paromoion* in Verbs, will descant upon resemblance of words that sometimes have like sense, sometimes quite unlike, this called *Antiphrasis* that *Ploce*.

Ille Chrysostomus potuit Chrysostomus esse.

Verba parant omnis tantum nil instar bonaris.

Liber ab erroribus parum, liber veritatumque illiberalis, ut premitur, non ut aremus, instruit Philosophia. Tantum amari affert, amari, nudibus ferri color videtur rubidus.

10. *Oxymoron* doth notifie concurrent juncture of two contraries predominant in the Subject. And it differeth from the former consisting of words having diverse both formes and figures but words here have alwayes the same sense oppositly, and either one is derived from the other or both descend from one same Primitive.

*Discors concordia facibus apta est.
His ut quaque pia est, bortatibus impia prima est.*

Neve foret scelerata, scelus facit—

Cum ratione insaniunt.

11. *Polypoton* doth figure the speech when the same words in divers sentences vary their affections either proper or common.

Hic pater, hujus opem pascas, huic iusta refertor.

Gratia, fac redames hunc toto pectore dignum.

Cedere jussit aquam, jussaque cessit aqua.

*Pulchra est virtus, pulchrum est virtutem colere,
pulchri sunt virtutis cultores, pulcherrime consulatur
virtuti colenda.*

12. Homoiotelexon accompanied with *Illocalem* closing short sentences with like sound are very plausible if they be not too common.

Non est dives, qui absque modo utendi, aut sine cupiendi, nummos augeat, nullos possidet, multum enim appetere egentis est indicium, sicut nihil patere egestatis est initium.

Aliud est benefacere, aliud injuriam non inferre, inde benevolentiam concilias, hinc odium vites.

5. Of Figures expressing or exciting passions.

Passions figure the speech either. 1. With some question of much concernment called *Erotema*, or 2. With diverting the speech another way called *Apostrophe*, or 3. With personating somewhat in a meere imagery called *Prosopopia*, or 4. With consulting the present Auditors called *Anacoinesis*, or 5. With the speaker's conversation with him selfe called *Aporia*, or 6. With some wonder at an unexpected strangeness called *Ecpbonefsis*, or 7. with seeming feare of prejudice called *Aposiopesis*, or 8. With indignation where no feare stoppeth, called *Aganaktisis*, or 9. With execrations when rage hath freedome called *Aria*, or 10. With imploration of pittie when all other means do faile called *Deesis*.

1. *Erotema* doth prejudice the matter or rather out dare a contrary judgement.

*Anulla futatis
Dona cavere dolis Danaum; sic notus volisses?
Quis erat armorum sensus, quæ in a mens oculi ma-
nus? quis ardor ille, quid cupiebas, quid optabas.*

2. *Apostrophe* doth by way of confidence in the cause appeal from the Judges present to the practise of most grave eminent persons, so engaging the present judicature to assent for feare of dishonour in dissenting from such gravity; *Tunc alloquor (Africane) tuus nomen Civitatis est Jolendari, nostra fraudivisses crimina quanti penderes?* Some call this Figure *Cleticon*, or *Cataphora*. And *Metabasis*, *Metathesis*, or *Metastasis* have some affinity therewith, being all used to digression.

Prosopopia doth differ from the former, that speaking to persons absent, this speaking unto any thing, personated, as if they were rationally, and present, or otherwile making such things to speak.

Quæ non mortalia pectora cogis Auri sacra famas—

Hosue mihi fructus, hunc fertilitatis honorem.

Officisque refers, quod adunc vulnus aratri, Rastrorumque fero, totoque exerceor anno.

Pissima vite dux Philosophia, nobis Clientibus tuis hac angustia consule tristissima. And it is called of some *Mimesis*, or *Ethoponia*.

4. *Anacoinasis* doth seem to take advise, but intendeth to convince the Auditors that the cause is good, if it were their owne.

Sit tua res eadem, quidnam rationis invses?

Quem virum aut heroa putatis eximia Clus celebrare posse præconiâ, quæ nec poetarum carminibus, nec annalium monumentis, aut prudentium judicijs, promeritis expendantur.

Hæcine mihi meritis illis, vobis licere velletis? libere loquimini.

5. *Aporia*

5. *Aporia* is used when we reason with our selves consideratly about some doubtful matter.

Quid faciam? nolo sudare, rogare pudebit.

En quid agam, rursusne procos utrisque priores

Experiar —

Both this last and former be Species of *Dialogismus*.

6. *Ecphrasis* doth break out at the strangeness of some unwonted accident either good or evill.

O pietas! O prisca fides, miranda virorum!

Hecus! etiam mensas consumimus, inquit Ioles.

Et quis non amentes Camillos, Carios, Fabios, pronunciet.

7. *Aposiopesis* and *Paralipsis* do sufficiently hint, what they profess to passe in silence, for avoiding danger, envy, or other brand of immodesty.

Insidias taces, velut ac tua furta rapinas.

Quid memorem portus, Lucrinæque adusta claustra?

Impari periculo ad iudicium venimus, sed mihi quidem; nolo tamen quisquam ominosus prologus.

Prosome hath neer affinity therewith. *Ne minus urgeam, ad me revertor.*

8. *Aganactesis* lets loose the reins to passion where no scare doth bridle it.

Cantandum illum, aut unquam tibi fuisse Cera.

Iuncta fuit —

Vos feram populi sceler: indelenter feram? aut ferendo insolentiores efficiam. Quæ malum dementia

9. *Aræ, Casæ, Diabole* Adde *Curies* to raging furie.

Dij quibus est pietas, glacies persolvere dignas

Curent. —

*Sed non ante datum tingetis manibus urbem,
 Quam vos dira fames, nostraeque injuria cadis,
 Ambesas subigat malis absumere mensas.
 Fletere si nequeo superos, Acheronta movebo.*

1. Deesis doth adjuce some mercy by that which is accounted with men most sacred.

Per superos, atque hoc Caelum, te posco favorem.

Obsecramus pro patria, deorum sacris parentum monumentis, vestrorum libertate, vestro ipsorum honore, nos miseros quam primum metu liberate.

The method of this Grammar, and how to make thereby good progresse in the Latine Tongue.

1. **I**T may be understood that common concerns (equally belonging to this Grammar with the former made for English) are not here repeated, but left to be remembered or learned thence.

2. Wherefore to begin with what is peculiar hereunto, it may be noted that the method of this Grammar is Syntheticall composing Analyticall Rules of Etymologie with results of Structures framed thence.

This composute is made for the reasons following. First, because the Syntax with the proper signes of each affection, belonging to the parts of Speech, are the specificall differences whereby such affections must be defined.

2. Next the placing of the Syntax in the same Rules with those severall affections are infallible guides

guides, whereby green wits, may with ease finde out the structure, which otherwise would perplex them.

3. Likewise the compasure of both together, doth conferre unto compendioulnes, the only way to advance young Schollers being encouraged to proceed when they have easie tasks.

4. Moreover it is necessary to abridge Grammars, because they are to be oft repeated as the only means to gaine proficiency for childrens progresse is a product in very few of ingenuity and industry, but in most youths of a customary practise growing into an habit.

4. This Grammar so much as is printed in English letters with examples thereto, belonging should be read twice or thrice within Book, and afterwards so oft without Book by young beginners: who from thence forward should be made acquainted with the method and meaning of all the Rules, wherein the Masters constant diligence will be necessary. And furthermore they should be made to read deliberately the Annotations annexed to the Rules, as good helps to understand them better, for both are needfull preparations to the reading of Latine Authors:

5. Lea nels thus enabled to take lessons should be taught to expound and examine the same themselves, by few plaine rules as certain guide, for instance.

1. They should look out first the principall verbe.

2. Next they should search out the Rect or Nominative, whereon that Verb and the rest depend,

3. Last, they should orderly dispose all circumstances, placing the object after neuters,

the sufferer after Transitives, the agent after passives, and ranging with all the premises such other respective limitations as belong thereto; all which are discernable in the Latine, by the concordance or other structure, and in English by good sense in every sentence, the necessary sequell of true expositions, as in example.

—*Hec Deos temere discant
Ut moniti per vos mortuus caede luetur.*

To scorn the Gods ah shall be purg'd with blood,
That all men warn'd by you may learn for good.

6. Thus youth for ease may begin with *Janna Linguarum*, learning thence by heart a Latine and English sentence to be rendered without Book, first intire, and asunder as before; next word for word together, a *Hec* ah, *temere* to scorn, *Deos* the Gods, *luetur* shall be purged, *caede* with blood, &c. So keeping close to the signes of all affections, as good helps at the first assay to know them and their structure. Then without losse of time, they themselves, should give account of every word, both in their severall affections, and in their Syntax by Grammar Rules in the proper words thereof, as followeth.

7. *Mox* (by the part of Speech) an absolute Adverb (by forme) of time (by Figure) primitive by construction) as a circumstance referring unto *Discant*.

Discant, a Verb adjectivall neuter of compleat sense betokening to do primitive (by proper affections) of the third conjugation and subjunctive mood interpreting another principall Verb and present tense, speaking of the time now, but
with

with (may) a Potentiall signe shareth with a continued future, called the simple and the third person spoken of and plurall number speaking of many it agreeth in Person and Number with the Rest *omnes*.

Vos a Pronounce Demonstrative primitive of a finite quantity (by proper affections, irregular in Declension, the plurall number and Accusative Case having *per* a Prepositionall Adverb primitive expressly serving thereunto, besides that it referreth as the agent or tearme whence to *moniti*.

Moniti, a Verb Passive of Imperfect sence, having reference to the Agents, derived from the Active *mones* the Participle Mood and Preter tense, speaking of Time past, the second Declension, Rest plurall Masculine Gender by termination, agreeing with *vis* an Ellipticall Substantive answering to the Question *who*.

Omnes, A Pronounce Demonstrative Collective, of indefinite quantity, Primitive of the third Declension, a Rest plurall of the Common of two by termination, but Masculine by construction, agreeing likewise with the same *vis* understood.

Ut a Coniunctive Adverb causall, Primitive, referring also unto *distant*.

Cade a Noun Substantive Primitive of the third Declension, an Ablative singular feminine gender by the termination *is*, not increasing, construed with *causa*, as the cause, and of the same signification, therefore the Preposition is Ellipticall.

Lueitur a verb adiectivall passive, derived from the

the Active *lao*, and that from *laug* syncope, or it hath affinity therewith, the third Conjugation Indicative mood future tense speaking of the time to come with signe *shall* the third person singular, agreeing with the Rest *tempera*.

Dives a Noun Substantive derived of *Deus* the second Declension Acculative plurall and masculine gender by the termination *us*, it followeth the verbe transitive *temperare*.

Temperare a verb Active transient to a sufferer for completing the sense thereof, primitive the infinitive mood present tense by *Enallage* standing for Rest Substantive Aprotic singular that goeth before *luctur*, and answereth to the question *what*.

Heu an Interjectionall adverb of sorrow primitive, and a circumstance belonging to *luctur*.

8. It may be noted, that words which end in exposition must begin at examination, in a retrograde course, for usually the word following doth referre to former guide, saying that it is a property of Interrogatives Relatives conjunctive and prepositional adverbs to precede in exposition all subsequent guides. Likewise it must be remembered that beginners should be used constantly to vary every Noun according to a proper example in their own Declension, and every Verb according to their proper terminations, with Analogy to the same Conjugation. And for finding the Rest of Nouns and theme of verbs, youths may take directions, page 39. & 105. or advise with Dictionaries.

9. In this progreffe to facillitate all the rest Learners should be made to repeat by parts all the

the Grammar at least once every week, giving as aforesaid a just account of the method and meaning of all Rules therein, and moreover should be made to get by hart the first Dictionary in the *Jenna* reading over the next often and deliberately, so as they may be ready to give English for any Latine word therein; and contrarywise Latine for every English, which will furnish them with good abillity to expound all other Latine Authors, and besides to discourse in Latine, whereof more followeth.

10. When such performances grow habituall, the proficients need not decline all variable words, or to account for common structures, but in both, to expedite the hardest, and to notice in every Syntax the true reason of it, wherein they should be then well versed, and lastly to distinguish what is regular, and what is figurative, either in Orthographie by a *Metaplasmus*, or in the sense of words by *Tropologie*, or in the parts of speech and their affections by *Enallage*; or in the structure by other Anomalies specified in the true reason of a right Syntax.

Not is it requisite that Learners be tyed to the signes of parts of speech, and their affections, when such and their Syntax are known without it; provided that such without impaire of the Authorss meanin improve their owne Translations, whether made lesse or larger, as *A rationibus delogatus pro sua fbi portia inter calculandum ibi adesse*. Let a well skilled Auditor help the accounts. *Sus ad lyram*. The brain that is undisciplinable, will never attaine to make good Musicke, and for their honour Schollers should be elaborate

the Active *lup*, and that from *lup* syncopated, or it hath affinity therewith, the third Conjugation Indicative mood future tense speaking of the time to come with signe *shall* the third person singular, agreeing with the *Recta temere*.

Dives a Noun Substantive derived of *Deus* the second Declension Acculative plurall and masculine gender by the termination *us*, it soloweth the verbe transitive *temere*.

Temere a verb Active transient to a sufferer for compleating the sense thereof, primitive the infinitive mood present tense by *Enallage* standing for *Recta* Substantive Aprotic singular that goeth before *lucet*, and answereth to the question *what*.

Heu an Interjectionall adverb of sorrow primitive, and a circumstance belonging to *lucet*.

8. It may be noted, that words which end in exposition must begin at examination, in a retrograde course, for usually the word following doth referre to former guide, saying that it is a property of Interrogatives Relatives conjunctive and prepositional adverbs to precede in exposition all subsequent guides. Likewise it must be remembered that beginners should be used constantly to vary every Noun according to a proper example in their own Declension, and every Verb according to their proper terminations, with Analogy to the same Conjugation. And for finding the *Recta* of Nouns and theme of verbs, youths may take directions, page 39. & 105. or advise with Dictionaries.

9. In this progreffe to facilitate all the rest Learners should be made to repeat by parts all the

the Grammar at least once every week, giving as aforesaid a just account of the method and meaning of all Rules therein, and moreover should be made to get by hart the first Dictionary in the *Jenna* reading over the next often and deliberately, so as they may be ready to give English for any Latine word therein; and contrarywise Latine for every English, which will furnish them with good abillity to expound all other Latine Authors, and besides to discourse in Latine, whereof more followeth.

10. When such performances grow habituall, the proficients need not decline all variable words, or to account for common structures, but in both, to expedite the hardest, and to notice in every Syntax the true reason of it, wherein they should be then well versed, and lastly to distinguish what is regular, and what is figurative, either in Orthographie by a *Metaplasmus*, or in the sense of words by *Tropologie*, or in the parts of speech and their affections by *Enallage*; or in the structure by other Anomalies specified in the true reason of a right Syntax.

Not is it requisite that Learners be tyed to the signes of parts of speech, and their affections, when such and their Syntax are known without it; provided that such without impair of the Authors meanin improve their owne Translations, whether made lesse or larger, as *A rationibus delegatus pro sua sibi peritia inter calculandum sibi adesse*. Let a well skilled Auditor help the at accounts. *Sus ad lyram*. The brain that is undisciplinable, will never attaine to make good Musicke, and for their honour Schollers should be elaborate

elaborate to advance their mothers tongue; for every language hath its idiomes and some elegancies proper to it selfe.

12. The next taske in a due procedure, should be to strive for a luxuriance in the tongue, which the Schollers learne, and that is only gained by due variations of the sentences, a peculiar product aymed at in this Grammar: First as of concernment to finde out the proper structure when it is ambiguous.

Next as of unavoidable necessity to prepare Phrases for Poeticall measures. Likewise as of ornament unto Prose by accessse of copiousnesse. Last, as of speciall use in the practick of all structure, when Masters to confirme their Schollers judgement, and to perpetuat the same in lasting memory, do appoint them to vary the choicest Phrases in their Lessons, so teaching them to use what is good, not (as it is properly tearmed) to make Latine, a base Coyne of their own stamp, no better then Barbarisme Solzemes, or at best a Neoterisme, or Idiorisme of their own tongue.

13. When youths are habituated in variations, and for that purpose have stored their note books and memories with variety and choise of phrases, they may be encouraged to constant exercise of the same in familiar discourses among themselves, and no sooner should they be allowed customarily to speak in Latine, then they are enabled to speak Latinly. At which advance Youths need no more to manage a common talking, for then they are fit for any office, saving of a perfect Orator, which is not to be aymed at by a vulgar wit, but by an herboick Genius to be discerned

discerned by these ensuing arguments.

14. Can Schoollers intend their learning all the Schoole time, that will suffice only for the precedent progresse.

Can they abate their recreations, if need require some meales, that cometh towards it, but not home, being for the most part desultory.

Do their studies aim at Honourable Eminencies?

Are they predominant to all other affections, whether of profit or pleasure?

Will they admit of no vacations, but still insinuate themselves, at all urgent intermissions?

Are they insuperable in all obstructions?

Do such Students resolve to attain their designs or perish with them? If thus affected, they are in possibility to prove competent Orators, either for God, as Churchmen, or for Princes as Embassadors, or for the people as their Advocates, or for Schooles or Universities, as the Professors. But who leap furthest, use first to stoop; And so must these begin with the lower step, and proceed by degrees and ordinary means.

15. Such then may first be exercised in short and easie simple Themes, for displaying the splendor of any Vertue, or discovering the filth of any Vice, for which use Schollers should before hand by the direction of their Master, be well stored with common places gathered, and Alphabetically ranged for more readinesse: And as a supplement when their stock proves scanty, they may be tutoured to make use of *Lycosthenes* and other Authors, borrowing thence some choyce Apophthegmes

theemes or similitudes the most proper Topicks usefull for beginners.

16. Learners may be taught therewith to make by turns some *Epigrams*, provided they be first taught the Lawes of Poetry, and with reading Poets bee well exercised to scan their Verses, and give account of feet and quantity, after which preparation they may be trained, first to make *Adonicum* and *Almanicum* or *Glyconicum* and *Phe-
retraticum*, or *Partheniacum*, and *Archilochium*, which are the shortest Verses, and each couple a just proportion of *Maonium* the chiefeft of all the rest. And if children cannot thrive or speed at such assays; To tune green witts they may be used to place words in Verses being before displac'd, as *Quis atrum oblatum nisi inops mentis res-
piciat*. And when their phancies are possessed with a true Poeticall Idea, they may be exercised in simple Themstaken from Buclers *Thesaurus*, where they have for matter a competent variety of Poeticall Phrases prepared for Verses, and if they will not suffice they may be further guided to use sentences taken from *Palingenius*, *Flores Poetarum* or such other, (not ingrossing intire Verses, untill they are accustomed to a poeticall stile, for then they may be instructed with ease to change Comedies into Verses, as choise matter for a satire, and well prepared for the forme, and with a new forme *Apophtegms* will afford convenient matter for other *Epigrams*.

17. After good proficiency in the former exercises, Schollers may proceed to more elaborat tasks upon mixt Themst, whether indefinite, as *an prior vire est caelestis*; or else finite called *Hypothesis*

pothesis, as an *Philosopho potior est calibatus*; But in discretion the Master should propound no other Question to his Schollers, then from their former reading, they may finde competent previous matter for their invention. Or what is therein wanting he should supply, either by suggesting to them proper arguments, or by directing them to learned Authors that minister such upon the same subject. Else their Declamations must prove jejune to say no more.

18. Lastly, to declaim with credit, will require good forme aswell as matter and in both a figurative Elocution. The last is epitomized in the next foregoing subject. And the first is summarily handled by *Apthonius*, and in *Farnabies*, *Jndex Rhetor tns*. But all three are ministred amply and magnificently by *Cassinus* in his Book *de Eloquentia* where the precepts need to meet with juncture of Diligence, Witt, and Memory, or cannot be converted into practise, and who are not content therewith, having abilities fit to be *Suadelas*, *Mivions* may learne of the Master Orator, *Cicero de oratore perfecto*.

But alas the melody of an *Orpheus* that was wont to allure both Birds and Beasts to sing in concordance, and dance compliance is now grown uselesse, because outvoyced by Drums and Guns, that stunn'd her Clients, & when they pause the whistling fluits do play, and pretend to Oracles, but prove Sirens.

FINIS.